

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ
Минский государственный лингвистический университет

Н. П. Грицкевич, М. Г. Богова, Т. В. Бусел

РАЗВИВАЕМ УМЕНИЯ ЧТЕНИЯ И ГОВОРЕНИЯ
DEVELOPING READING COMPREHENSION AND
SPEAKING SKILLS

Рекомендовано учебно-методическим объединением по лингвистическому образованию в качестве пособия для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-23 01 02 «Лингвистическое обеспечение межкультурных коммуникаций (по направлениям)»

В двух частях

Часть вторая

Минск МГЛУ
2021

УДК 811.111'243(075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923.137.72
Г85

Рецензенты : кандидат филологических наук, доцент
Т. А. Сысоева (МГЛУ); кандидат психологических наук, доцент
О. А. Уланович (БГУ)

Грицкевич, Н. П.

Г85 Развиваем умения чтения и говорения = Developing reading comprehension and speaking skills : пособие для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-23 01 02 «Лингвистическое обеспечение межкультурных коммуникаций (по направлениям)». В 2 ч. Ч. 2 / Н. П. Грицкевич, М. Г. Богова, Т. В. Бусел. – Минск : МГЛУ, 2021. – 280 с.

ISBN 978-985-28-0034-1 (Ч. 2)
ISBN 978-985-28-0009-9

Пособие предназначено для совершенствования навыков и умений чтения и понимания письменного текста, а также развития умений межкультурного общения. Содержит три предметно-тематических раздела в соответствии с учебной программой по дисциплине «Практика устной и письменной речи первого иностранного языка (английский)». Каждый из них включает аутентичные англоязычные тексты, предтекстовые, текстовые и послетекстовые коммуникативно-ориентированные упражнения, проблемные и творческие задания, разработанные как для аудиторной, так и самостоятельной работы.

Адресуется студентам первого курса факультета межкультурных коммуникаций МГЛУ, а также изучающим английский язык в других учреждениях высшего образования.

УДК 811.111'243(075.8)
ББК 81.432.1-923.137.72

ISBN 978-985-28-0034-1 (Ч. 2)
ISBN 978-985-28-0009-9

© Грицкевич, Н. П., Богова, М. Г.,
Бусел Т. В., 2021
© УО «Минский государственный
лингвистический университет», 2021

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Целью пособия, состоящего из двух частей и предназначенного для студентов первого курса факультета межкультурных коммуникаций МГЛУ, является совершенствование навыков и умений чтения и понимания письменного текста, а также развитие умений межкультурного общения в соответствии с учебной программой по дисциплине «Практика устной и письменной речи первого иностранного языка (английский)» для студентов учреждений высшего образования, обучающихся по специальности 1-23 01 02 «Лингвистическое обеспечение межкультурных коммуникаций (по направлениям)».

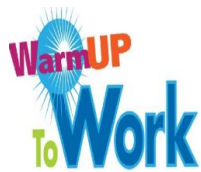
Включенные в пособие аутентичные англоязычные тексты, основными критериями отбора которых стали разнообразие жанров, новизна, учет познавательных интересов и потребностей студентов, профессиональная значимость, содержат актуальный и проблемный материал, носят ярко выраженный страноведческий характер, что обеспечивает совершенствование навыков и умений различных видов чтения, а также служит познавательным источником для осуществления межкультурного общения.

Данная вторая часть включает 3 предметно-тематических раздела (Sections) “Eating and Cooking”, “Shopping and Money”, “Climate and Weather”, которые состоят из нескольких учебных занятий (Units). Композиционно каждый из разделов содержит аутентичные англоязычные тексты, предтекстовые, текстовые и послетекстовые коммуникативно-ориентированные упражнения, проблемные и творческие задания, разработанные как для аудиторной, так и самостоятельной работы. Значимой является рубрика «Читаем с удовольствием» (Reading for Pleasure), в которую в соответствии с предметно-тематическими областями учебной программы включены произведения классических и современных британских и американских авторов.

Каждое учебное занятие состоит из нескольких этапов (Warm-up Activity, Pre-reading, While-reading, Post-reading, Language Focus, Culture Focus, Speaking Practice, Writing Focus), направленных на совершенствование навыков ознакомительного, поискового и изучающего чтения, расширение словарного запаса, развитие умений и навыков говорения с целью достижения успешной реализации речевого намерения в ситуациях кросскультурного и профессионального общения, а также развитие критического мышления студентов, специализирующихся в области межкультурной коммуникации.

Section I. EATING AND COOKING

Unit 1. DAILY MEALS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in pairs. When you hear the expression English breakfast or continental breakfast what associations do you have?

- Do you know the history behind English breakfast?
- What do you know about the tradition of English breakfast?

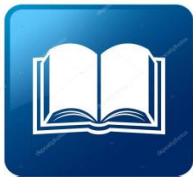


WHILE READING TASK

Read the text below and match the following titles with the correct paragraphs. There is one extra title you do not need to use.

- A. A Taste of Home
- B. Extravagant or Simple
- C. A Victorian Tradition
- D. The Most Important Meal of the Day
- E. Traditionally Eaten at any Time of the Day
- F. The Splendid Breakfasts of the English Gentry
- G. The Full English Breakfast





READING FOCUS 1

THE TRADITION OF THE ENGLISH BREAKFAST

The full English breakfast is a centuries old British tradition which dates back to the early 1800's, when the Victorians first perfected the art of eating breakfast and elevated the most important meal of the day into an art form.

When the Victorians combined tradition with the most important meal of the day, they created a national dish, one that is widely loved to this day and regularly enjoyed by millions of English breakfast lovers all over the planet.

1.

The story of the English breakfast begins in the country houses of the English gentry and their tradition of hospitality.

The idea of the English breakfast as a unique national dish stretches back to the thirteenth century and an English institution called the gentry, who could be considered to be the guardians of the traditional English country lifestyle and a group of people who saw themselves as the cultural heirs of the Anglo-Saxons.

The gentry were considered to be a distinct social class, made up of the 'high born and people of noble and distinguished blood', its members were the senior members of the clergy, those with social connections to landed estates, relatives of titled families with no title of their own, landowners and 'genteel' families of long descent.

The gentry saw it as their duty to keep alive the traditional practices, values, cuisine and the English country lifestyle. The great country houses of England, owned by members of the gentry and the centre of huge country estates, were important hubs of local society, where breakfast was considered to be an important social event.

The breakfast table was an opportunity to display the wealth of the estate and the quality of the meats, vegetables and ingredients produced on the surrounding land and a chance to show off the skills of the cooks who prepared a vast selection of typical English breakfast dishes every morning, for the residents and guests of the house.

The gentry used to love their breakfast feasts and in the old Anglo-Saxon tradition of hospitality, used to provide hearty full breakfasts for their visiting friends, relatives and neighbours. The gentry used to enjoy a full breakfast before they went out to hunt, before a long journey, the morning after their parties and when reading the mail and periodicals of the day.

Breakfast was always a leisurely affair and considered to be a splendid way to start the day, if you wanted to get an idea of what members of the gentry were like, take a look at Mr Algernon Moncrieff and his best friend, Mr John Worthing.

Breakfast served in these country houses was made up of ingredients sourced from farmers based on the estate, the meats were cured and cooked using regional recipes and methods. Their breakfasts were made up of traditional English dishes, cooked in a typical English way and it was here that the idea of the traditional English breakfast began.

2.

By the time Queen Victoria came to the throne, the gentry class was in decline and a wealthy middle class was emerging.

The Industrial Revolution and the British Empire at its height were fantastic creators of wealth and the newly rich middle classes saw the idea of the gentry as a social model to aspire towards. Those seeking to advance themselves socially, studied the habits of the gentry, the traditions of their country houses and their fondness for the English breakfast.

For the aspiring Victorian middle classes, breakfast became a chance to demonstrate your wealth and social upbringing.

Like all great Victorian traditions, the eating of full English breakfast can be a refined and elegant experience, it is easy to understand why the more affluent middle and upper class Victorians thought of the traditional full English breakfast as the most civilised way to begin their day and regularly indulged in the tradition.

But the full English breakfast was not just a meal for the wealthy, during the industrial revolution, the working classes began to eat a full English breakfast on a regular basis, it was sensible to eat a hearty breakfast before starting the day, providing them with the energy they needed, to work a full day worth of grinding manual labour.

The English breakfast tradition spread until its peak in the early 1950's, when roughly half of the British population started their day with a full English breakfast, turning what was once a meal for the nobility into a national breakfast dish.

For more than two centuries, the tradition of the full English breakfast has been enjoyed across the full spectrum of British society and it is for this reason that the full English breakfast is still being served in family kitchens, hotels, bed & breakfast and pubs throughout Great Britain and in countless British (English, Irish or Scottish) pubs internationally.

The traditional full English breakfast was so popular, that the Scottish and the Irish developed their own versions and in doing so, changed what was a predominantly English tradition into a much loved British tradition and it is for this reason that the full English breakfast must be considered to be a British cultural institution.

3.

Known colloquially as afry up, the traditional English breakfast is called a full breakfast for good reason, although you do not absolutely have to eat two sausages, three slices of bacon and two fried eggs in order for it to still be traditional.

But whichever way you look at it, the full English breakfast is a substantial meal consisting of back bacon, eggs, British sausage, beans, tomato, mushrooms, black pudding and toast. These ingredients may vary depending on the specific region of the British Isles you happen to be in and a subject that is still open to (sometimes quite fierce) debate.

For example, the Southern English generally would argue that black pudding is something that the English breakfast inherited from the Scottish, but in the North of the country, black pudding is widely consumed and viewed as an essential part of the traditional full breakfast. We side with the Northerners here, there is nothing wrong with black pudding and it has been produced in the North of England for longer than we have been eating traditional English breakfasts.

Hash browns however is a controversial ingredient that many believe does not belong in a traditional English breakfast and we agree, hash browns are for Americans and if we want potato in our breakfast, we will have chips (quite common).

Then there exist the regional variants like the Scottish/Irish full breakfast, usually exactly the same dish, but with slight changes in the ingredients depending on the region and preference of the locals.

The full Irish breakfast usually contains Irish bacon and sausage, but also traditional regional ingredients such as white pudding, Irish soda bread and Irish potato cake, whereas the full Scottish breakfast usually contains local ingredients as black pudding or a slice of haggis.

The meat ingredients were traditionally sourced from local farmers and if you were to travel all over the country and eat a full English every day, you had a breakfast which tasted completely differently each and every time, giving you the opportunity to explore the rich diversity of the British sausage, black pudding and bacon from across the land.

Each region of Great Britain had a full breakfast that contained pork which had usually been raised in that region, and some regions are famed for their bacon and sausage, famous British sausage producing regions of note are Lincolnshire & Cumberland, but many other parts of the country have also produced their own sausages and bacon for centuries.

4.

For the connoisseur of the traditional English breakfast, the regional differences in the pork ingredients present an opportunity to add variety into the tradition, but if you wanted to add even more variety and extravagance, do what the wealthy Victorians did and add baked halibut steaks, fried whiting, stewed figs, pheasant legs, collared tongue, kidneys on toast, sausages with fried bread, pig's cheek and Melton pork pie.

The traditional full English breakfast can either be formally served on white linen in a fine dining establishment and contain a veritable feast of breakfast dishes, or informally served on a plastic tablecloth, in a greasy-spoon cafe, with much less decorum and french fries or chips.

In Great Britain, you can find greasy-spoon cafe's on industrial estates serving the most amazing (if a little greasy) English breakfasts and exactly the same dish served as a fine dining experience in the nicest hotels and restaurants around the country and a lot of the time, the best English breakfasts are not always found in the nicest places to eat.

5.

Do not be fooled by mention of the word 'breakfast' in all of this, its presence does not necessarily mean that the traditional full English breakfast has to be eaten at breakfast time, indeed, it is such a substantial a meal that it can be enjoyed at any time of the day. If you are anything like the members of this society, you sometimes eat your English breakfast around lunchtime, but have also been known to eat one for dinner too.

Even though the traditional English breakfast is served at family and social gatherings, it is culturally acceptable to ignore the other occupants of your table whilst you eat your English breakfast and read your newspaper, do not be offended if the person you are eating your English breakfast with ignores you, other than to comment on what he or she is reading.

It is traditionally during the eating of the English breakfast that the British would acquaint themselves with the current affairs of the day and contents of their periodicals, this is an important part of the tradition and Society feels that our favourite places to eat should always contain a selection of the most popular periodicals of the day.

6.

To British expatriates living overseas, the traditional full English breakfast will always taste like a little piece of England and in some parts they will kidnap you for a packet of Lincolnshire sausages, black pudding and five slices of back bacon.

British pubs in foreign countries everywhere have long offered a taste of home and a full breakfast to their customers, providing an environment that nostalgically and culturally resonates with the more expatriate amongst us.

The traditional English breakfast is truly a national dish, it is not for nothing that we call it a British institution and usually the very best English breakfasts are served by our mothers and made with love.

<https://www.englishbreakfastsociety.com>



Haggis, the national dish of Scotland, is a savoury pudding containing sheep's pluck (heart, liver, and lungs), minced with onion, oatmeal, suet, spices, and salt, mixed with stock, and cooked while traditionally encased in the animal's stomach.

Black pudding is extremely popular in England and Ireland. In northern England, it even has a festival dedicated in its honour: the World Black Pudding Throwing Championships, wherein participants sling black puddings in an effort to knock Yorkshire puddings off a stack. British black pudding is generally made with pig's blood mixed with pork fat and oatmeal or barley. It is traditionally served as part of a full breakfast.

Hash browns are a popular American breakfast dish consisting of pan-fried shredded, diced, julienned or riced potatoes; some recipes add diced or chopped onions.

OUT OF THIS WORLD

Meaning
EXTREMELY GOOD

YOUR CHOCOLATE CAKE IS JUST
OUT OF THIS WORLD!

GRAB A BITE

Meaning
TO GET SOMETHING TO EAT

BOB OFTEN TRIES TO **GRAB A**
BITE BETWEEN MEETINGS



POST-READING TASKS

1. Mark the following statements as true (T), false (F) or not stated (NS).

1. The Victorians intentionally created The full English Breakfast.
2. The gentry considered themselves to be superior to other people.
3. The word “genteel” in line 20 means “respectable”.
4. The traditional Full English Breakfast is served in the morning.
5. The ingredients used to prepare the traditional English Breakfast come from all over England.
6. The gentry perceived breakfast as a feast.
7. During the Victorian era, the gentry was at its peak.
8. The gentry became a source of inspiration for the middle class.
9. The English breakfast is served exclusively in England.
10. They also call the traditional English breakfast a fry-up, because everything is fried.
11. Everyone agrees that the typical English breakfast should consist of specific ingredients.
12. Most variants of English Breakfast also contain pork.
13. The traditional full English breakfast is meant to be eaten quietly.
14. During the eating of the English breakfast the British usually read the news.

IN A PINCH

Meaning

**ONLY IF NECESSARY
OR AS A SUBSTITUTE**

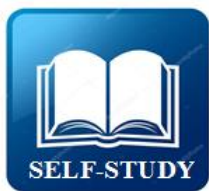
**IN A PINCH, YOU CAN USE
KETCHUP, BUT IT'S BETTER
TO USE FRESH TOMATOES**

**TAKE SOMETHING
WITH A GRAIN OF SALT**

Meaning

**TO NOT COMPLETELY BELIEVE SOMETHING
THAT YOU ARE TOLD**

**UNCLE BILL TELLS GREAT STORIES, BUT
WE TAKE WHAT HE SAYS WITH A GRAIN OF
SALT BECAUSE HE TENDS TO EXAGGERATE**



READING FOCUS 2

SKIPPING BREAKFAST EVERYDAY KEEPS WELL-BEING AWAY

Skipping breakfast often seems like an easy option for people who are anxious to diet in the hope of losing a few kilos. After all, in today's fast, high-pressured style of life, there is little time anyway to sit down to a meal before leaving for work or school. Time in the morning is precious and the choice between a few extra minutes in bed and getting breakfast ready all too often falls in favour of a bit of extra snooze time. But research has shown that regularly skipping breakfast is a poor choice for lots of reasons. What's more, it is likely to achieve the very opposite of the dieter's wishes, leading to weight gain rather than weight loss.

Scientists at Imperial College London have found a connection between skipping breakfast and a desire for more unhealthy foods rich in fat, sugar and salt. In one part of the experiment, volunteers skipped breakfast and were then shown pictures of different types of food, which they were asked to rate in terms of desirability. The foods with the highest ranking turned out to be those rich in calories such as chocolate bars, cakes and biscuits. During this experiment, the volunteers underwent an MRI brain scan. The results showed that the orbital frontal cortex, which plays a big part in our appetite and desire for food, became particularly active when pictures were shown of high calorie food. It is believed that this is a natural reaction designed to keep the body functioning in times of food scarcity, when it is necessary to maximise the intake of calories. However, in times of plenty, such a reaction only leads to people eating more than they really need and therefore contributes to obesity and ill-health generally.

In another part of the experiment the participants were divided into two groups: those who ate breakfast and those who skipped it. Afterwards, both groups were given pasta for lunch and told that they could eat as much as they liked. Those who hadn't eaten breakfast ended up eating far more than those who hadn't skipped the early morning meal.

Dr Goldstein, who was a member of the research team, told the Daily Mail newspaper: "Through the participants' MRI results and observations of how much they ate at lunch, we found ample evidence that fasting made people hungrier and increased the appeal of high-calorie foods and the amount people ate. Beware of going for long periods without eating because you are going to crave high-calorie foods much more because of changes in how your orbital frontal cortex works."

A Finnish study on breakfast habits revealed that people who regularly skip breakfast tend to go in families. In other words, if parents tend to go without breakfast, then so do their kids. The worrying thing about this is that the same

researcher, Dr Keski-Rahkonen of Helsinki University, found that such habits were associated with an unhealthy lifestyle generally. So breakfast skippers were found to be more obese, more likely to smoke, drink excessive quantities of alcohol and take insufficient exercise. They were also less likely to be concerned about health issues in general.

Teachers in school have noticed how children who have no breakfast (or an inadequate one) tend to be disruptive in class, have difficulty in concentrating and have learning difficulties because of feeling over-tired. Skipping breakfast appears to be fairly widespread in Britain. One survey showed that almost 17% of 11–16 year-olds in the UK had nothing to eat before going to school. The main reasons given were lack of time. The figure was slightly lower for primary school children.

Other research has shown that eating breakfast may aid general cognitive performance and it might even improve our ability to cope with stress. In one study, admittedly carried out by a manufacturer of breakfast products, participants who ate breakfast were far less stressed than those who didn't when faced with a challenging situation, such as having to solve a maths problem. The tests were carried out on the same group of people on two separate occasions, one when the participants ate breakfast and one when they didn't. After eating breakfast, the participants made an astonishing 75% fewer mistakes in arithmetic tests. They also completed the tests more quickly

It seems that people who eat breakfast generally have a healthier lifestyle and they are less likely to be obese. Scientists suggest that one reason for this might be that breakfast, apart from providing important nutrients, fiber and vitamins, takes the edge off appetite so that people are less likely to indulge in a big lunch. An association between eating breakfast and maintaining regular mealtimes has also been observed, leading to fewer bouts of bingeing and snacking.

All in all, eating breakfast appears to be a good thing and most scientific research confirms that skipping this vital early morning meal is only going to increase the desire for unhealthy food at inappropriate times. Rather than lose weight by giving up on breakfast, you are therefore more likely to put on unwanted kilos.

<https://www.thesun.co.uk>



to diet – to eat less in order to lose weight. e.g.: He says that he is dieting but I can't see that he has lost any weight at all.

diet – the kind of food that we regularly eat. e.g.: "She has a balanced **diet** which includes plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables."

to go / be on a diet: To limit the amount of food that you eat to lose weight. e.g.: "Sam has decided that after Christmas he is going to **go on a diet**." "I **have been on a diet** for six months and I can really see the benefit."



POST-READING TASKS

Are the following statements true or false?

1. Scientists at Imperial College attempted to discover the healthiest kind of breakfast.
2. The researchers at Imperial College found that not eating breakfast encouraged people to overindulge at lunchtime.
3. A Finnish study has shown that breakfast skippers are also likely to have an unhealthy lifestyle.
4. About a quarter of British schoolchildren don't have time to eat breakfast.
5. There is some evidence that stress levels increase when breakfast is skipped.



SPEAKING TASK

Work in small groups. Then swap your ideas in class.

1. How many meals a day do you usually have?
2. What is your favourite breakfast, lunch and dinner?
3. What do you usually eat for breakfast?
4. What is your attitude to the article?
5. Do you agree that skipping this vital early morning meal you are more likely to put on weight?
6. In some countries the tradition of family eating meal together is disappearing. Why does it happen? What effects can this lead to with respect to the family on the society nowadays?



LANGUAGE FOCUS

There are some common idiomatic expressions with food words. You may be able to hypothesize what these expressions mean but if not, start by guessing whether they carry positive or negative connotations. Then check your intuition by rewriting the text using the sentences in the next task.

BRINGING HOME THE BACON ON THE GRAVY TRAIN

Bob works hard to **bring home the bacon**, and put **bread and butter** on his family's table. Every morning, he drags himself to his desk at the bank and faces his tedious 10-hour-a-dady job. His boss, Mark, is a **bad egg** but has somehow

taken a liking to Bob so he always speaks well of Bob in front of Mr Davies, the owner and **big cheese** of the company. Mark tells Mr Davies that Bob's **the cream of the crop** and is **one smart cookie** who **uses his noodles**. Mark likes to **chew the fat** with Bob during coffee break and discusses **half-baked** company plans with him because he trusts Bob and knows that Bob won't **spill the beans** behind his back. On these occasions, Bob tries to avoid any **hot potatoes** and, even if Mark isn't **his cup of tea**, Bob makes an effort to **butter him up** by leading Mark into discussions about electronic gadgets which Mark **is nuts about**. Bob really thinks that Mark is **out to lunch** and **nutty as a fruitcake**, but **in a nutshell**, if he **polishes the apple**, his job could become **a piece of cake** and maybe one day he will find his **gravy train**.



POST-READING TASKS

1. This is definitely an exaggerated use of idiomatic expressions. But you can see how these expressions make spoken informal language much more colourful and jovial. How good is your food-idiom intuition? Here are some non-food idiom expressions which you can use to substitute the food idioms in the short text above.

Non-food expressions	Food idioms
1. boss	a. big cheese
2. food	b.
3. very easy	c.
4. on the table but still unofficial	d.
5. the best	e.
6. continues to be servile and brown-nose his boss	f.
7. scoundrel	g.
8. make a living	h.
9. is an intelligent person	i.
10. show admiration	j.
11. basically	k.
12. share confidential information	l.
13. means to a big income with little effort	m.
14. chat	n.
15. thinks	o.
16. a little out of touch with reality	p.
17. problematic issues	q.
18. a little crazy	r.
19. really likes	s.
20. the type of person he likes	t.

2. Use food idioms to substitute non-food expressions.

Example: Baby Jessica is the **person that is adored by her father**. – Baby Jessica is the **apple of her father's eye**.

1. I don't want my little brother hanging around with the **people who are often in trouble** on the street.

2. I thought I was just going to interview the secretary, but they let me talk to the **very important person (VIP)** himself.

3. Just explain the **necessities, the main thing** of your report. You don't have to go into details.

4. My husband has had to **earn the income** ever since I broke my leg.

5. We'll have to **be extra nice to someone (usually for selfish reasons)** Angie before we tell her the news about the broken vase.

6. I remember dad working late to **earn the income**.

7. I love reading **silly** romance novels because I don't have to think.

8. We hired **the best** to entertain us at the Christmas party.

9. The unionized grocers have been enjoying **extremely good pay for minimal work** for twenty years.

10. Choosing a location for our new store is **a controversial or difficult subject** right now...

11. **Simply**, I'm having a bad day.

12. Harry has been **crazy or mad** ever since he lost his job.

13. Your daughter is **a very intelligent person**. She reads much higher than her grade level.

14. You're going to have to really **use your brain** on this crossword puzzle. It's an extra difficult one.

Bring home the bacon

Meaning
To earn money to live on.

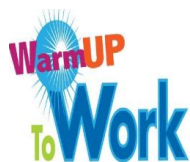
If John is going to stay at home with the kids, someone else will have to **bring home the bacon**.

Cream of the crop

Meaning
The best of all.

These three students are very bright. They are the **cream of the crop** in their class.

Unit 2. FOOD AROUND THE WORLD



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in pairs

- Do you know any typical meals from the following countries?

France

Mexico

China

Greece

Italy

India

Australia

England

Spain

America

Japan

Turkey

- What do you think influences a country's food?
- What influences the food in your country?
- What kind of food do you prefer?
- What kinds of international cuisine do you like?
- What are your favourite international dishes?



BEFORE READING TASKS

1. Read the quotations about English food, and discuss in small groups: Do all the people have the same opinion about English food?

1. "On the Continent people have good food; in England people have good manners." *George Mikes*

2. "If the English can survive their food, they can survive anything." *George Bernard Shaw*

3. "Even today, well-brought up English girls are taught to boil all vegetables for at least a month and a half, just in case one of the dinner guests comes without his teeth!" *Calvin Trillin*

4. "It takes some skill to spoil a breakfast – even the English can't do it!" *John Kenneth Galbraith*

5. "English cooking? You just put things into boiling water and then take them out again after a long while." *An anonymous French chef*

2. Discuss the following questions with your partner.

1. What is the traditional 'national dish' of Britain?
2. How many other types of British food can you think of?
3. What is your opinion of British food?
4. Have you ever been to Britain? If so, what did you eat and what did you think of it?

3. You are going to read an article about British food written by William McGuire “Bill” Bryson, a best-selling Anglo-American author of books on travel, the English language, science, and other non-fiction topics.

Born in the United States, he was a resident of Britain for most of his adult life before returning to America in 1995. For five years in the mid-1990s, author Bill Bryson (his numerous books include Notes from a Small Island and A Short History of Nearly Everything) wrote a column for Traditional Home magazine on life in England, called Anglophile.

Can you predict what the article is about?

4. Before you read the text let’s check some of the vocabulary to make it easier for you. How many words and expressions are you familiar with?

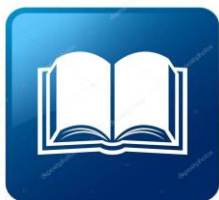
cuisine food meal foodstuff dish

Which of them mean:

- 1) a particular article or preparation of food;
- 2) a style or manner of cooking; the food prepared by a restaurant, household, etc.;
- 3) any of the regular occasions, such as breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc., when food is served and eaten; the food served and eaten;
- 4) any substance containing nutrients, such as carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, that can be ingested by a living organism and metabolized into energy and body tissue; nourishment in more or less solid form as opposed to liquid form;
- 5) any material, substance, etc., that can be used as food.

5. Match the words with the definitions.

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 1. culinary | a. highly enjoyable, esp. pleasing to the taste; delightful something strange or fascinating |
| 2. gustatory | b. a counter where light refreshments are served; a meal at which guests help themselves from a number of dishes and often eat standing up |
| 3. pantry | c. a fixed allowance of food, provisions, etc., esp. a statutory one for civilians in time of scarcity or soldiers in time of war |
| 4. hapless | d. a small room or cupboard in which provisions, cooking utensils, etc., are kept |
| 5. ration | e. of, relating to, or used in the kitchen or in cooker |
| 6. curiosity | f. unclear, indistinct, vague, or indefinite |
| 7. boisterous | g. unfortunate, ill-fated, unlucky, luckless |
| 8. buffet | h. noisy and lively; unrestrained or unruly |
| 9. delectable | i. a rare or strange object; curio |
| 10. obscure | j. of or relating to the sense of taste |



READING FOCUS 1

IN PRAISE OF BRITISH FOOD

By Bill Bryson

One of the more durable misconceptions among travelers is that it isn't possible to get a good meal in Britain. This simply isn't true. I know. I've lived here almost 20 years and I recently had one.

I'm only joking, of course. I love British food, and will not hear a word against it. The British, after all, are responsible not only for possibly the single finest foodstuff ever invented (the chocolate digestive biscuit, a sort of British equivalent to the Oreo cookie), but also countless other wonderful and distinctive gustatory delights: **Yorkshire pudding, hot cross buns, sherry trifle, crumpets, scones, mince pies, plum pudding, toasted teacakes, veal-and-ham pie, Lancashire hot pot, a galaxy of noble cheeses like Stilton, Wensleydale, and the obscure but delectable Dorset blue vinney**, not to mention the ever-reliable **cheddar** and **double Gloucester**, and countless other scrumptious comestibles that have made me the indolent and contented lump I am.

Admittedly, to the unaccustomed stomach, some British food can take a little getting used to. Actually, it can take a lot of getting used to, and some of it you would never get used to at all.

In almost every British pantry you will find a jar of something called **Marmite**, a yeast extract that has the consistency and smell of an industrial lubricant. You spread it on toast or crackers. I have never met a foreigner living in Britain who could stand the stuff (and I make it a point to ask). The British, it goes without saying, adore it. Nor have I yet found a foreigner (or come to that many English people) able to muster any real enthusiasm for **haggis**, the national dish of Scotland. A haggis is a bloated sausage stuffed with oatmeal and minced sheep's heart. The most remarkable thing about it is that it looks and tastes even worse than it sounds. The Scots eat haggis in huge quantities on New Year's Eve and then, I can only presume, spend the rest of the year feeling grateful that December 31st comes but once a year.

But apart from these and a few other curiosities like **kippers** (a kind of shoe insole masquerading as an edible fish) and beef-flavored potato chips, British food is not nearly as eccentric or dismaying as it is sometimes made out to be. Often it is outstanding. The traditional British breakfast of eggs, bacon, sausages, fried bread,

cups of tea, and a rack of toast remains eminently hearty and satisfying, if not notably healthful. The invariable Sunday lunch of **roast potatoes** and **steaming vegetables** is one of England's glories. And the traditional afternoon **tea of scones** and **clotted cream**, delicate sandwiches, and agreeable little cakes is a standing rebuke to those who contend that British cuisine never rises beyond a pallid blandness.

Then how, with all this good food about, are we to account for the unshakably dire reputation of British cuisine?

Well, first there is the problem of the names. Even when it is quite delicious, British food often sounds frankly silly. Just consider the names of some classic British dishes: **bubble and squeak**, **toad in the hole**, **brown Windsor soup**, **gooseberry fool**, **bangers and mash**, **flannel cakes**, **faggots in gravy**. No one, as far as I can tell, has ever satisfactorily explained why the British insist on endowing their food with such strange and arresting names, any more than anyone has explained why they give their towns names like Great Snoring and Chew Magna, or why they make their judges wear little mops on their heads. It is just one of those oddly British things that remains a mystery to foreigners.

The upshot is that it is hard to take seriously the culinary habits of a nation whose noblest dishes bear names like **bubble and squeak** and **toad in the hole**. (For the record, bubble and squeak is leftover cabbage and potatoes fried together, toad in the hole is sausages baked in batter, and both are delicious.) If the British had given these dishes respectable-sounding names like, say, "**vegetables Wellington**" or "**seasoned pork cartridges en crouete**," people would be clamoring for them and no one would joke about British cooking.

To understand British cuisine you should know that the British have never been terribly comfortable around food. (Sensual pleasures of all types make them uneasy; I think it has something to do with all those years spent under Queen Victoria.) Unlike the Italians, for whom every meal is a joyous and boisterous occasion, or the French, for whom dining is a religion, to the British eating has always had the air of a necessary duty, something to be gotten through without fuss or emotion, like jury service or a visit to the dentist.

For British eaters, the greatest thing that ever happened was World War II. The war brought rationing, which the British accepted with a kind of relief. Rationing relieved them of the burden of having to think seriously about food. It so suited the national temperament that it was kept in force for eight full years after the war ended, long after the rest of the world had returned to exciting dining. As late as 1953, some cabinet members were urging that rationing be continued forever, making Britain the only nation in history to seriously consider legislating monotonous eating.

By the early 1970s, when I first came to Britain, enough of the old wartime spirit was left that the British would eat pretty much anything set before them. Particularly in places like railroad station buffets and museum cafeterias – the very places hapless tourists were most likely to encounter British cuisine – the food was not just unappetizing, it was often unidentifiable. I still wake up nights in a cold sweat from the memory of my first visit to the buffet at Victoria Station in London, where the food all looked as if it had been brought from a storeroom at the Institute for Tropical Diseases and where if you wanted sugar in your tea you had to use a spoon, unwashed at least since the Battle of Britain, attached to the wall with a length of grubby string.

None of that would happen now. I wouldn't say that the food at Victoria's Station is worth crossing an ocean for, but at least now you can eat it without wondering if first you should tell someone where you put your will. Today all over Britain public food is infinitely better than it was 20 years ago. The restaurant at the Tate Gallery in London is even listed in the **Michelin Guide**. To anyone who nibbled one of the Tate's cardboard sandwiches or leaden cakes 20 years ago, this transformation is nothing short of a miracle.

My formal introduction to British cuisine came in 1973 when I took a job at a psychiatric hospital outside London. There in the hospital cafeteria I was introduced to classic English dishes like **shepherd's pie** ("made with real shepherds," as my English friend Ben used to joke), **steak and kidney pie**, **treacle tart**, and the **steamed pudding known as spotted dick**. The hospital food was cheap, stodgy, ferociously traditional, and surprisingly good. I grew to love it. I love it yet.

Sadly, it is almost impossible to find today. The English so associate their traditional foods with institutions like schools and hospitals that they refuse to eat it voluntarily. With a very few notable exceptions like **Simpson's in the Strand**, a justly celebrated establishment where roast meats are served from silver-domed serving carts by waiters in long white aprons and outsized floppy hats, there are hardly any places left where the visitor to Britain can experience the understated glory of British cuisine.

Of the 224 restaurants in London recommended in my 1991 **Michelin Guide**, only seven feature English cooking. According to Michelin, there are more good Japanese and Thai restaurants in London than English ones. In probably no other country in the world is it harder to find native cuisine. That, I think, is both astonishing and sad.

If you want to sample real English food, you'll have to wangle an invitation into an English home, or you could do as I did and get a job in the National Health Service. The pay's not great, but the food is excellent.

Notes from a Small Island by B. Bryson



Marmite— trademark a yeast and vegetable extract used as a spread, flavouring, etc.

Wensleydale is a style of cheese originally produced in Wensleydale, North Yorkshire, England, but now mostly made in large commercial creameries throughout the UK.

Michelin Guide – Michelin Guides are a series of annual guide books published by the French company Michelin for more than a century. The term normally refers to the Michelin Red Guide, the oldest European hotel and restaurant reference guide, which awards Michelin stars for excellence to a select few establishments. The acquisition or loss of a star can have dramatic effects on the success of a restaurant. Michelin also publishes a series of general guides to countries.

Simpson's in the Strand –one of London's most historic landmark restaurants and has been offering classic British dishes for over 185 years. One of the earliest Master Cooks insisted that everything in the restaurant be British and the Simpson's of today remains a proud exponent of the best of British food. Famous regulars include Charles Dickens, George Bernard Shaw, Sir Arthur Conan Doyle (and his fictional creation, Sherlock Holmes), Benjamin Disraeli and William Gladstone.



POST-READING TASK

1. Are the following statements true or false?

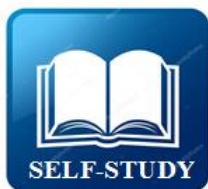
1. My formal introduction to British cuisine came in 1973 when I took a job at Traditional Home magazine.
2. If you want to experience British cuisine, you'll have to go to the buffet at Victoria Station in London.
3. Today all over Britain public food is infinitely worse than it was 20 years ago.
4. The Irish eat haggis in huge quantities on New Year's Eve and then spend the rest of the year feeling grateful that December 31st comes but once a year.
5. According to Michelin Guide, there are fewer good Japanese and Thai restaurants in London than English ones. In probably no other country in the world is it easier to find native cuisine.
6. If you want to sample real English food, you'll have to get a job in the National Health Service. The pay's not great, but the food is excellent.



SPEAKING TASKS

Work in small groups.

1. Was there anything in the story you cannot accept?
2. Did you agree with anything you read?
3. Do you think there is any bias in the article?



READING FOCUS 2

Read the story and try to explain the phrasal verbs in bold.

A COOKERY COURSE WITH A MICHELIN-STARRED CHEF

My sister Mary is looking for a boyfriend. I suggested a friend who is a chef. She said she once **went out** with a chef. She didn't want **to go through** that experience again. His name was Jean-Paul, he was a famous Michelin-starred Chef in Paris. She wanted to impress him but she didn't know anything about cooking so she **went on** a cookery course. On the first day she bought the necessary ingredients for the first lesson, some milk. It was very expensive, the price had **gone up**! Prices are always **going up**, she thought. And when she opened the carton, she realised it **had gone off**! Then the teacher arrived! It was her boyfriend. She decided to **carry on**. He **went through** the first recipe. "This is a famous English recipe that **goes back to** the Romans." Explained Jean-Paul. It was very complicated. My sister knew she could never make it. Then the teacher **went out** of the room. She suddenly had an idea. She stuck her fork into the electric socket. Bang! The lights **went out**, and then the alarms **went off**. Then the sprinklers **went off**. It was chaos. My sister never went back to the cookery class and she never saw Jean-Paul again.

<https://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>



POST-READING TASK

Match the phrasal verb with the definition.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1) go through an experience | a. have an experience |
| 2) go off (alarm, bomb, lights) | b. explode(bomb), become unlit (lights),
start working (alarm) |
| 3) go out with someone | c. return |
| 4) go on a course/trip | d. become sour, not fresh |
| 5) go up (prices) | e. do a course, have a trip |

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 6) go back to somewhere | f. leave a room |
| 7) go back to the eighteenth century | g. increase, rise |
| 8) go through an exam | h. have it's historical origin in (the eighteenth century) |
| 9) go off (milk) | i. examine an exercise or exam from beginning to end |
| 10) go out of a room/building | j. be the boy/girlfriend/partner of someone |



WRITING FOCUS

Write an article for an international travel magazine about the best aspects of your country's food (cover as many points mentioned below as you can manage). Get ready to present your ideas orally in class.

1. Are there any differences and similarities between English and Belarusian cuisine?
2. In what way British food and eating habits differ from yours?
3. What similarities and differences do you find the most striking?
4. What influences the food in your country?
5. Do you think your country's food is the tastiest in the world?
6. Do you prefer home cooking or restaurant food?
7. Which dishes in your country do foreigners find the most unusual or difficult to eat? Why?
8. Is there a food in your country that foreigners generally dislike?
9. What national dishes from your country would you recommend to the world?
10. Which local or national dishes would you recommend to a visitor to your country?
11. If you lived abroad, what food would you miss from your home?
12. Is there any food in your own country, which you can't stand? Why don't you like it?
13. What is your favourite dish? Why do you like it so much? Do you think we eat better now than we did in the past? Explain your answer
14. What are your favourite places to eat out in your country? Why?



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. Make sure you know how to speak about kitchen equipment and how to use it. Study the pictures below and do the next task.

Equipment		used to...	what? e.g.:
	wok	stir-fry	vegetables, meat, fish
	steamer	steam	fish, rice, vegetables
	deep fat fryer	deep-fry	fish, potatoes
	casserole	braise/stew (cook meat slowly in liquid in a closed container)	meat, vegetables
	food processor	chop, slice and mix	meat, vegetables, etc.
	whisk	beat	eggs, cream



colander

drain

vegetables that
have been washed



grater

grate

cheese, e.g.
parmesan



garlic
crasher

crash

garlic



sieve

sieve (separate solids
from liquid or larger
solids from
smaller ones)

flour, tomatoes



peeler

peel

vegetables



lemon
squeezer

squeeze

lemons, limes



corkscrew

open

wine bottles



ladle

serve

soup

2. Find six compound words and word combinations.

cheese	lemon	Kitchen	food	garlic	deep fat
processor	fryer	Grater	crusher	squeezer	scales

Which equipment would you need to drain vegetables cooked in water, stir-fry vegetables, open a bottle of wine, serve soup, remove lumps in flour, beat eggs?

Which type of food can you squeeze, grate, sieve, steam, slice, braise?



CULTURE FOCUS

FOOD PRESENTATION

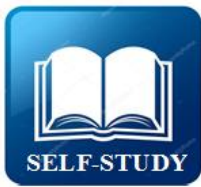
Your homework is to search the Internet or other sources and find information to make a presentation to another group or the class on a food or dish that is eaten in your country. In (preferably same nationality) pairs/groups, make notes on the themes below. These could be used as the structure of your presentation.

1. The history of the food / dish.
2. Ingredients.
3. How to cook it.
4. Different styles or regional variations.
5. The part it plays in your life.
6. Other.

RESEARCH PROJECT

Your homework is to search the Internet or other sources and find information about a particular food in British or American culture:

- identify some food that is representative of British or American culture;
- discuss the similarities and differences between food in British or American culture and food in your own culture;
- search for more information that might possibly help explain the existence of certain foods in the culture or factors that influence eating behaviors;
- present the information to the class.



READING FOCUS 3

FOOD AND COOKING IN BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH

Anyone in Britain or the U.S. who tries to follow a recipe from the other side of the Atlantic will quickly realize that American and British English have many differences in food and cooking terminology. While some culinary terms are identical in both varieties of English, there are some differences that can cause havoc in the kitchen. For example, a British **biscuit** is an American **cookie**, and an American **biscuit** is a British **scone**. And things become even more confusing when it comes to meat. British **rump steak** or **Scotch fillet** is **sirloin** in the U.S., and British **sirloin** is called **porterhouse** by Americans. This article takes a look at some of the major differences in vocabulary and usage related to food and cooking in American and British English.

Fruit and vegetables

While most fruits and vegetables have the same names in American and British English, there are a few that differ. For example, the vegetable with a smooth, dark purple skin that is known as an **aubergine** in Britain is called an **eggplant** in the U.S. And those small, sweet berries with a dark blue skin that British speakers refer to as **bilberries** are called **blueberries** by Americans. Here are some other examples:

American

beet/beets
chicory
endive
fava bean
navy bean
romaine lettuce
rutabaga
scallion/green onion
string bean
zucchini

British

beetroot
endive
chicory
broad bean
haricot bean
cos lettuce
swede
spring onion
runner bean
courgette

Meat

American and British English use the same words for basic, broad categories of meat: **beef**, **pork** and **lamb**. However, some American terms for specific meat dishes and cuts of meat might confuse a British shopper, and vice versa. For example,

what the British call a **joint** (a large piece of meat, such as a leg of lamb or loin of pork, cooked in an oven and eaten with potatoes and other vegetables) is known as a **roast** in the U.S. Most Americans would be shocked to hear that the **Sunday joint** is a British family tradition. To Americans, a **joint** is not something that people roast, but something that they smoke: a marijuana cigarette. Here are some other potentially confusing examples:

American

chop
corned beef
flank steak
ground meat
liverwurst
pig's foot
porterhouse
sausage
sirloin
tenderloin steak

British

cutlet
salt beef
skirt steak
minced meat
liver sausage
pig's trotter
sirloin
sausage/banger
rump steak/Scotch fillet
fillet steak

Seafood

Some varieties of seafood eaten in the U.K. and the U.S. are the same, but many are different. For example, the most popular shellfish in the U.S. – what Americans call **shrimp** – are called **prawns** in Britain, as in a **prawn cocktail** (quite naturally referred to as a **shrimp cocktail** in the U.S.). And whereas British **shrimp** are usually quite small, American **shrimp** come in a wide variety of sizes (from **miniature** through **small**, **medium**, **large**, **extra-large**, **jumbo**, all the way up to **colossal**) and types, the most popular being the brown, pink, and white varieties from the Atlantic Ocean. Here are some other examples of differences in names for seafood:

American

black cod
canned tuna
crawfish
fish sticks
Lox
smoked herring

British

coal fish/coleey
tinned tuna
crayfish
fish fingers
smoked salmon
kipper

Cooking terminology

Reading an American **cookbook** (called a **cookery book** in Britain), a British cook will quickly notice differences in the names for basic cooking equipment and terms for various cooking procedures. For example, when Americans want to bake a cake, they mix the dough in an **electric blender** (a **liquidizer** in Britain), and then set the dough in a **cake pan** (something called a **cake tin** in Britain) before placing it in the oven. And when yeast is added to American bread before it is baked, the dough **ris**es (increases in size), whereas when yeast is added to British dough, it **pro**ves. Here are some other differences:

American	British
to beat or whip	to whip or whisk
to broil	to grill
cheesecloth	muslin
to clean fish	to gut fish
pastry shell	patty case
wax (or waxed) paper	greaseproof paper

Types of restaurants

While both Americans and the British use the term **restaurant** to refer to a place where meals are prepared, sold and eaten, American English has some unique terms to describe places where you can buy meals that are quick, simple and cheap. A **diner** serves large portions of simple dishes at low prices. **Diners** are often found along highways or on the outskirts of towns and are very popular with families for breakfast, lunch and dinner. Long-distance travelers often stop at them because they are likely to have good parking facilities. The nearest equivalent in British English is a **café**, and while Americans will sometimes use the term **café** to refer to a simple restaurant where you can get inexpensive meals and drinks, or an ordinary **diner**, nowadays the term is more and more frequently applied to French-style cafés serving different types of coffee drinks (espresso, cappuccino, and the like), alcoholic drinks, and small meals.

The term **coffee shop** refers to a small restaurant, often located in a hotel or airport, which serves non-alcoholic drinks and simple, inexpensive meals such as **meat loaf** (a mixture of small pieces of meat, bread, and eggs, baked in one piece) and potatoes.

A **snack bar** is an informal eating place where you usually have to stand at a counter in order to eat your food. The menu is usually limited to smaller food items such as sandwiches and pastries.

The somewhat old-fashioned term **luncheonette** is sometimes used to refer to small restaurant serving simple, light meals.

A **truck stop** is an area with a restaurant beside a major road where **truck drivers** (called **lorry drivers** in Britain) can stop and have an inexpensive meal, buy **gas** (**petrol** in British English), or have their vehicle repaired.

A **deli** (short for **delicatessen**) is a shop specializing in unusual foods that are cooked and ready to eat. An American deli often has tables where you can eat, and the type of food sold will depend on the shop's location. For example, many delis in New York City specialize in Jewish cooking and serve only **kosher food** (food prepared according to Jewish laws), while a Los Angeles deli might serve **California rolls** (a Japanese-style dish made of rice, avocado and crabmeat rolled in a piece of seaweed).

Ordering food in a restaurant

If you order breakfast in an American **coffee shop** or **diner**, the waiter may ask, 'How do you want your eggs?' Assuming that you want eggs, your answer can include any one of the usual possibilities also available in Britain: **boiled, fried, poached** or **scrambled**. However, if you choose to have your eggs **fried**, you can be even more specific by using one of the following terms:

sunny-side up	fried on one side only, so that the yoke, or 'sunny' side, is on top
over	well fried on both sides
over easy	lightly fried on both sides

And here are some other shorthand terms that you are likely to hear in a **coffee shop** or **diner**:

BLT a bacon, lettuce and tomato sandwich

OJ orange juice

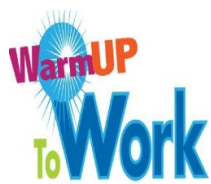
fries **French fries** (thinly cut fried potatoes, like British **chips**)

sub a **submarine** (a sandwich made from a large French-style loaf of bread and a variety of fillings)

If you ask for **chips** or **potato chips** in an American restaurant, you will get what the British call **crisps** (small, thin pieces of potato that have been cooked in oil).

<https://www.bbc.co.uk/food/cuisines>

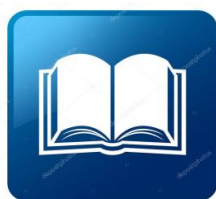
Unit 3. TABLE MANNERS AND DINING ETIQUETTE



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in pairs.

- Speak about the table manners you should observe in your homes or in the public cafeteria.
- What do you do before eating?
- Are there rules about your hands or the way you sit?
- What do you do at the end of a meal?
- Why do we have rules about how to eat?
- Have you ever been in situations where the rules you are used to are not appropriate?



READING FOCUS 1

Read the article to complete the tasks after the text.

INTERESTING DINING MANNERS IN DIFFERENT CULTURES

Around the world, people gather to eat lunch or dinner. Every culture has developed this social ritual in different ways, so today there are certain rules that need to be respected while eating – for example, how to use utensils (knife, fork, spoon) correctly or when to ask to be served. We call them **dining or table manners**.

These rules differ from one culture to another, so what is considered to be polite in one society can be seen as very rude somewhere else!

A Brief History of Table Manners in Europe

Most table manners that Europeans and North Americans practice today originate from the Age of Exploration in the 1500s. It is believed that dinners became more refined when Catherine de' Medici, who was the Pope's niece, married the future King of France Henry II. She was appalled by the fact that French people did not use forks, and had greasy hands from cutting the meat.

Around that time, a few more educated people, like Erasmus of Rotterdam (a Dutch scholar), had already written about the use of utensils and restraining oneself from eating quickly. At that time, knives, spoons and cups were shared among all those sitting at the table, and soups were drunk directly from the bowl.

Soon after, individual cutlery was introduced, and napkins were adopted to protect the diners' clothes. Even today, it is a good table manner to put the napkin on the lap.

Hands Up, France

When in France, you might be advised to rest your wrists or forearms (but not elbows) on the table while you are not using utensils to eat. Keeping your hands under the table where nobody can see them is considered a bad dining manner.

In many other countries in Europe and North America, "hands on the table" is one of the basic dining rules, particularly reiterated to children. Why is that? Some people suggest this tradition started because people were afraid of what other people might be doing under the table, like holding a weapon.

Siesta, Spain

If you find yourself in Spain during the summer, you will notice that many shops are closed in the early afternoon, even on a regular work day. The reason they are closed is siesta, a short nap people take after lunch.

The word *siesta*, meaning "nap" in Spanish, derives from the Latin word *sexta*, meaning the sixth hour (counting from the dawn), which explains why siesta is usually taken around noon.

This particular dining ritual can be explained by the very high temperatures during the summer, and the great amount of food a typical midday meal in Spain includes. These two together make people very sleepy, so they made it a nationwide acceptable habit to take a break from work in the middle of the day and get some rest.

Slurping, East and South Asia

While in most European cultures making any noise while drinking or chewing is considered to be very rude, in places like Japan and China those who slurp their soups have good dining manners.

In other words, slurping your soup or noodles very loudly sends a message to the chef or the host that the food is delicious. The more loudly you slurp it, the more appreciation for the meal you show. If by any chance you forget to do it, the cook could be very offended or hurt thinking that you did not enjoy their meal!

Eating With Hands, Ethiopia

Traditionally, Ethiopian food is eaten with hands, usually from a large communal plate. Several delicious meals are put together in a plate with some injera, a flat Ethiopian bread, and the guests sit around it.

The proper way to eat Ethiopian food is to tear off a piece of the bread, grab some food that is close to you with it, and put it in your mouth. Because you are touching the food with your hands, make sure that you always wash them before and after the meal. The left hand is considered unclean, so it is advisable and polite to only use your right hand to eat.

No Extra Cheese, Italy

Italian cuisine is known for using a great variety of cheese in large quantities. Italian pizzas and pastas are particularly rich in cheese. In an Italian restaurant anywhere in the world, the parmesan cheese might even be freshly grated in front of you on your plate.

However, unless cheese is offered to you, you should not ask for extra cheese for a dish like pizza which already has a lot of cheese. Such an act is considered to be an insult to the cook, so most waiters will simply refuse to bring more cheese.

Another cheese-related rule in Italy applies to seafood – adding cheese to a seafood pasta is unimaginable according to traditional dining manners, so it is best you avoid it.

<https://www.etiquettescholar.com>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Multiple choice. For each item below, circle the best answer.

1. What does “reiterate” mean?
 - a) demand
 - b) repeat
 - c) forgive
2. What does “appalled” mean?
 - a) feeling shocked or disgusted
 - b) being concerned
 - c) liking something very much
3. What does “refined” mean?
 - a) improved, elegant
 - b) rejected, disliked
 - c) done again

4. What does “cutlery” mean?
 - a) the act of cutting bread
 - b) decrease one’s debt
 - c) cutting utensils
5. What does “exploration” mean?
 - a) hiding something from someone
 - b) searching and finding out about something
 - c) changing the rules
6. Many shops in Spain are closed in the ... afternoon.
 - a) primary
 - b) early
 - c) first part of the
7. Italians eat cheese in large
 - a) quantities
 - b) sums
 - c) volumes
8. You should always ... your wrists on the table.
 - a) lay
 - b) relax
 - c) rest
9. Ethiopian food is usually served in a large ... plate.
 - a) communal
 - b) mass
 - c) joint
10. Asking for more cheese is an insulting
 - a) gesture
 - b) act
 - c) move
11. Start eating by tearing ... a piece of bread.
 - a) up
 - b) away
 - c) off
12. In many cultures, the left hand is considered
 - a) impure
 - b) unclean
 - c) stained,
13. Catherine de’ Medici was appalled ... the behavior of the French.
 - a) about
 - b) of
 - c) by

14. Taking a siesta is ... habit all over Spain.
- a) an acceptable
 - b) a justifiable
 - c) a bearable
15. Erasmus thought people should ... themselves from eating quickly.
- a) repress
 - b) restrain
 - c) limit
16. Why do people take siestas?
- a) because the weather is hot
 - b) because the law requires it
 - c) because cooking takes a long time
17. Where should you put your napkin during dinner?
- a) around your neck
 - b) on the table
 - c) on the lap
18. What should you never add to seafood in Italy?
- a) pasta
 - b) cheese
 - c) olive oil
19. How does slurping compliment the cook in Japan?
- a) it means they will get a tip
 - b) it means the food is delicious
 - c) it means they are good-looking
20. When did Europeans adopt forks and spoons?
- a) from the 16th century onwards
 - b) 2,000 years ago
 - c) in the 20th century

2. Based on the information in this article, which statement is true?

- 1. Siestas always last from 3pm to 5pm.
- 2. Siestas are usually taken around midday.
- 3. When in France, the best advice is to rest your elbows on the table.
- 4. When in France, the best advice is to rest your wrists on the table.



SPEAKING TASK

1. What are the differences and similarities between the table etiquette in your country and the countries that you have read about?
2. What are some mealtime habits or rules in your home that a visitor from one of these countries may find unusual? What could you do to make your visitor feel comfortable?
3. How did you learn what behavior is appropriate at mealtime?
4. Why are rules of etiquette so important? What rules do you follow when you're sharing a meal at someone's house? What rules do you follow in a restaurant?



CULTURE FOCUS

RESEARCH PROJECT

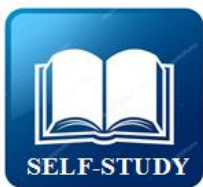
Your homework is to search the Internet or other sources and find information to make a presentation to another group or the class. Imagine you are going to visit some country. Choose any country you like. What would you do before you go there? (Find some info on the Internet about culture, food, good table manners – what you CAN and CAN'T do).



**MANNERS DIFFER WITH CLIMATES;
THE NORTHERN NATIONS ARE DISTINGUISHED FOR
ETIQUETTE, THE EASTERN FOR CEREMONY,
AND THE SOUTHERN FOR COURTESY**



Lord Acton
English historian, politician and writer



READING FOCUS 2

TRADITIONAL FORMAL DINNER PLACE SETTING

Place settings are called **covers** (French – couverts). The cover includes the place for each guest, and their **crockery, tableware, glassware, cutlery** and **napkin**. There are two basic covers in restaurants and which is chosen depends on whether the customer is choosing from an à la carte or table d'hôte menu.

An **à la carte menu** offers a wide choice of individual dishes. A **table d'hôte menu** is a fixed price menu, with a set meal offering a number of courses. With an à la carte cover the cutlery, flatware and crockery for each course are laid just before each course is served. The traditional cover laid prior to the start of the meal is that suitable for **hors d'oeuvre** (the first course in a classic menu sequence).

Table d'hôte cover requires the **cutlery** and **flatware** for the whole meal to be laid out before the first course is served. Place the side plate down to mark the cover position and then build the cover around this plate. With table d'hôte, surplus tableware is removed after the customer has placed their order. This is called the change cover. The reasons for this are: cutlery that is not required will only clutter the table. The cutlery is laid in the order the guest eats the courses from the outside in.

<https://www.etiquettescholar.com>



POST-READING TASK

Match the words with the definitions.

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| 1. crockery | a. eating utensils such as knives, forks, and spoons |
| 2. cutlery | b. cups, plates, bowls, etc., used to serve food and drink, especially made of china |
| 3. napkin | c. a small amount of food served before a meal, or at a party |
| 4. hors d'oeuvre | d. a small square piece of cloth or paper, used while you are eating to protect your clothes or to clean your mouth or fingers |



SPEAKING TASK

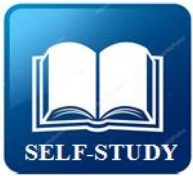
Using the picture below describe how to set a table properly for special occasions.



BEFORE READING TASK

As a short story writer, O. Henry (1862–1910) towers over most other American writers. Some critics compare him with Guy de Maupassant of France. Both were highly prolific writers, immensely popular with their countless readers. Both of them wrote hundreds of very gripping stories with dramatic plots. Henry's wit, characterization and plot twists were adored by his readers, but often derided by critics. O. Henry's stories generally have surprise endings catching the readers totally unawares. Compared to Guy de Maupassant, O. Henry's stories are much more playful. Witty narration and abrupt turn of events are the hallmarks of his style. Most of O. Henry's stories are set in the early 20th century. Many are based on innocuous events in New York City and revolve around ordinary people – clerks, policemen, waitresses, etc.

Look at the title of the story; try to find a good Russian variant of translation for it. Make suppositions what the story may be about.



READING FOCUS 3

SPRINGTIME À LA CARTE

By O. Henry

It was a day in March. Sarah was crying over her bill of fare.

Think of a New York girl shedding tears on the menu card!

To account for this you will be allowed to guess that the lobsters were all out, or that she had sworn ice-cream off during Lent, or that she had ordered onions, or that she had just come from a Hackett matinee. And then, all these theories being wrong, you will please let the story proceed.

The gentleman who announced that the world was an oyster which he with his sword would open made a larger hit than he deserved. It is not difficult to open an oyster with a sword. But did you ever notice any one try to open the terrestrial bivalve with a typewriter? Like to wait for a dozen raw opened that way?

Sarah had managed to pry apart the shells with her unhandy weapon far enough to nibble a wee bit at the cold and clammy world within. She knew no more shorthand than if she had been a graduate in stenography just let slip upon the world by a business college. So, not being able to stenog, she could not enter that bright galaxy of office talent. She was a free-lance typewriter and canvassed for odd jobs of copying.

The most brilliant and crowning feat of Sarah's battle with the world was the deal she made with Schulenberg's Home Restaurant. The restaurant was next door to the old red brick in which she hall-roomed. One evening after dining at Schulenberg's 40-cent, five-course table d'hôte (served as fast as you throw the five baseballs at the coloured gentleman's head) Sarah took away with her the bill of fare. It was written in an almost unreadable script neither English nor German, and so arranged that if you were not careful you began with a toothpick and rice pudding and ended with soup and the day of the week.

The next day Sarah showed Schulenberg a neat card on which the menu was beautifully typewritten with the viands temptingly marshalled under their right and proper heads from "hors d'oeuvre" to "not responsible for overcoats and umbrellas."

Schulenberg became a naturalised citizen on the spot. Before Sarah left him she had him willingly committed to an agreement. She was to furnish typewritten bills of fare for the twenty-one tables in the restaurant – a new bill for each day's dinner, and new ones for breakfast and lunch as often as changes occurred in the food or as neatness required.

In return for this Schulenberg was to send three meals per diem to Sarah's hall room by a waiter – an obsequious one if possible – and furnish her each afternoon with a pencil draft of what Fate had in store for Schulenberg's customers on the morrow.

Mutual satisfaction resulted from the agreement. Schulenberg's patrons now knew what the food they ate was called even if its nature sometimes puzzled them. And Sarah had food during a cold, dull winter, which was the main thing with her.

And then the almanac lied, and said that spring had come. Spring comes when it comes. The frozen snows of January still lay like adamant in the crosstown streets. The hand-organs still played "In the Good Old Summertime," with their December vivacity and expression. Men began to make thirty-day notes to buy Easter dresses. Janitors shut off steam. And when these things happen one may know that the city is still in the clutches of winter.

One afternoon Sarah shivered in her elegant hall bedroom; "house heated; scrupulously clean; conveniences; seen to be appreciated." She had no work to do except Schulenberg's menu cards. Sarah sat in her squeaky willow rocker, and looked out the window. The calendar on the wall kept crying to her: "Springtime is here, Sarah – springtime is here, I tell you. Look at me, Sarah, my figures show it. You've got a neat figure yourself, Sarah – a – nice springtime figure – why do you look out the window so sadly?"

Sarah's room was at the back of the house. Looking out the window she could see the windowless rear brick wall of the box factory on the next street. But the wall was clearest crystal; and Sarah was looking down a grassy lane shaded with cherry trees and elms and bordered with raspberry bushes and Cherokee roses.

Spring's real harbingers are too subtle for the eye and ear. Some must have the flowering crocus, the wood-starring dogwood, the voice of bluebird – even so gross a reminder as the farewell handshake of the retiring buckwheat and oyster before they can welcome the Lady in Green to their dull bosoms. But to old earth's choicest kin there come straight, sweet messages from his newest bride, telling them they shall be no stepchildren unless they choose to be.

On the previous summer Sarah had gone into the country and loved a farmer. Sarah stayed two weeks at Sunnybrook Farm. There she learned to love old Farmer Franklin's son Walter. Farmers have been loved and wedded and turned out to grass in less time. But young Walter Franklin was a modern agriculturist. He had a telephone in his cow house, and he could figure up exactly what effect next year's Canada wheat crop would have on potatoes planted in the dark of the moon.

It was in this shaded and raspberried lane that Walter had wooed and won her. And together they had sat and woven a crown of dandelions for her hair. He had immoderately praised the effect of the yellow blossoms against her brown tresses; and she had left the chaplet there, and walked back to the house swinging her straw sailor in her hands.

They were to marry in the spring – at the very first signs of spring, Walter said. And Sarah came back to the city to pound her typewriter.

A knock at the door dispelled Sarah's visions of that happy day. A waiter had brought the rough pencil draft of the Home Restaurant's next day fare in old Schulenberg's angular hand. Sarah sat down to her typewriter and slipped a card between the rollers. She was a nimble worker. Generally in an hour and a half the twenty-one menu cards were written and ready.

Today there were more changes on the bill of fare than usual. The soups were lighter; pork was eliminated from the entrées, figuring only with Russian turnips among the roasts. The gracious spirit of spring pervaded the entire menu. Lamb, that lately capered on the greening hillsides, was becoming exploited with the sauce that commemorated its gambols. The song of the oyster, though not silenced, was *dimuendo con amore*. The frying-pan seemed to be held, inactive, behind the beneficent bars of the broiler. The pie list swelled; the richer puddings had vanished; the sausage, with his drapery wrapped about him, barely lingered in a pleasant thanatopsis with the buckwheat and the sweet but doomed maple.

Sarah's fingers danced like midgets above a summer stream. Down through the courses she worked, giving each item its position according to its length with an accurate eye. Just above the desserts came the list of vegetables. Carrots and peas, asparagus on toast, the perennial tomatoes and corn and succotash, lima beans, cabbage.

Sarah was crying over her bill of fare. Tears from the depths of some divine despair rose in her heart and gathered to her eyes. Down went her head on the little typewriter stand; and the keyboard rattled a dry accompaniment to her moist sobs.

For she had received no letter from Walter in two weeks, and the next item on the bill of fare was dandelions – dandelions with some kind of egg – but bother the egg – dandelions, with whose golden blooms Walter had crowned her his queen of love and future bride – dandelions, the harbingers of spring, her sorrow's crown of sorrow – reminder of her happiest days.

Madam, I dare you to smile until you suffer this test: Let the Marechal Niel roses that Percy brought you on the night you gave him your heart be served as a salad with French dressing before your eyes at a Schulenberg table d'hôte. Had Juliet so seen her love tokens dishonoured the sooner would she have sought the lethean herbs of the good apothecary.

But what a witch is Spring! Into the great cold city of stone and iron a message had to be sent. There was none to convey it but the little hardy courier of the fields with his rough green coat and modest air. He is a true soldier of fortune, this *dent-de-lion* – this lion's tooth, as the French chefs call him. Flowered, he will assist at love-making, wreathed in my lady's nut-brown hair; young and callow and unblossomed, he goes into the boiling pot and delivers the word of his sovereign mistress.

By and by Sarah forced back her tears. The cards must be written. But, still in a faint, golden glow from her dandeleonine dream, she fingered the typewriter keys absently for a little while, with her mind and heart in the meadow lane with her young farmer. But soon she came swiftly back to the rock-bound lanes of Manhattan, and the typewriter began to rattle and jump like a strike-breaker's motor car.

At 6 o'clock the waiter brought her dinner and carried away the typewritten bill of fare. When Sarah ate she set aside, with a sigh, the dish of dandelions with its crowning various accompaniment. As this dark mass had been transformed from a bright and love-indorsed flower to be an ignominious vegetable, so had her

summer hopes wilted and perished. Love may, as Shakespeare said, feed on itself: but Sarah could not bring herself to eat the dandelions that had graced, as ornaments, the first spiritual banquet of her heart's true affection.

At 7:30 the couple in the next room began to quarrel: the man in the room above sought for A on his flute; the gas went a little lower; three coal wagons started to unload – the only sound of which the phonograph is jealous; cats on the back fences slowly retreated toward Mukden. By these signs Sarah knew that it was time for her to read. She got out “The Cloister and the Hearth,” the best non-selling book of the month, settled her feet on her trunk, and began to wander with Gerard.

The front door bell rang. The landlady answered it. Sarah left Gerard and Denys treed by a bear and listened. Oh, yes; you would, just as she did!

And then a strong voice was heard in the hall below, and Sarah jumped for her door, leaving the book on the floor and the first round easily the bear's. You have guessed it. She reached the top of the stairs just as her farmer came up, three at a jump, and reaped and garnered her, with nothing left for the gleaners.

“Why haven't you written – oh, why?” cried Sarah.

“New York is a pretty large town,” said Walter Franklin. “I came in a week ago to your old address. I found that you went away on a Thursday. That consoled some; it eliminated the possible Friday bad luck. But it didn't prevent my hunting for you with police and otherwise ever since!”

“I wrote!” said Sarah, vehemently. “Never got it!” “Then how did you find me?”

The young farmer smiled a springtime smile. “I dropped into that Home Restaurant next door this evening,” said he. “I don't care who knows it; I like a dish of some kind of greens at this time of the year. I ran my eye down that nice typewritten bill of fare looking for something in that line. When I got below cabbage I turned my chair over and hollered for the proprietor. He told me where you lived.”

“I remember,” sighed Sarah, happily. “That was dandelions below cabbage.”

“I'd know that cranky capital **W**'way above the line that your typewriter makes anywhere in the world,” said Franklin.

“Why, there's no **W** in dandelions,” said Sarah, in surprise.

The young man drew the bill of fare from his pocket, and pointed to a line.

Sarah recognised the first card she had typewritten that afternoon. There was still the rayed splotch in the upper right-hand corner where a tear had fallen. But over the spot where one should have read the name of the meadow plant, the clinging memory of their golden blossoms had allowed her fingers to strike strange keys.

Between the red cabbage and the stuffed green peppers was the item:

“Dearest Walter, with hard-boiled egg.”

<https://americanliterature.com>



Table d'hôte [French] – 1) (of a meal) consisting of a set number of courses with limited choice of dishes offered at a fixed price; 2) (of a dish) offered on such a menu; not part of a set meal.

À la carte [French] – 1) (of a menu or a section of a menu) having dishes listed separately and individually priced; 2) (of a dish) offered on such a menu; not part of a set meal.

Hors d'oeuvre [French] – appetizer or starter. It is a small dish served before a meal in European cuisine. Some hors d'oeuvres are served cold, others hot. Hors d'oeuvres may be served at the dinner table as a part of the meal, or they may be served before seating, such as at a reception or cocktail party.

Succotash is a culinary dish consisting primarily of sweet corn with lima beans or other shell beans. Other ingredients may be added including corned beef, potatoes, turnips, salt pork, tomatoes, multi-colored sweet peppers.



bill of fare at a restaurant – menu.

dandelion – a wild plant, having yellow rayed flowers and deeply notched basal leaves, which are used for salad or wine.

proprietor – an owner of an unincorporated business enterprise.

viand – a type of food, especially a delicacy.

PIE IN THE SKY

Meaning
**AN IDEA OR PLAN THAT IS
UNLIKELY TO HAPPEN**

HIS DREAMS OF BECOMING A
FAMOUS SINGER ARE JUST
A **PIE IN THE SKY**

EASY AS PIE

Meaning
VERY EASY

YOU WANT MOM TO GIVE YOU
FIFTY DOLLARS? **EASY AS PIE.**
JUST TELL HER YOU NEED
TO BUY SOME NEW SHOES.



POST-READING TASK

Read the text again scanning it for specific information to answer the following questions.

1. What do you think the sentence “the world is an oyster you can open with your sword” means? Why do you think the author claims that the person who invented this sentence “became more famous than he deserved”?
2. What does Sarah do for a living?
3. Does Sarah work with other people or does she work alone?
4. What is the name of the restaurant Sarah makes an arrangement with? What sort of arrangement is it?
5. How does Sarah get the job in the restaurant?
6. Why do you think the menu ends with the words “not responsible for coats and umbrellas”?
7. How many meals a day does Sarah get in exchange for her typewritten menus?
8. Why isn't it spring even though the spring months have arrived?
9. What happened over the summer? Where was Sarah spending her time during those months?
10. When were Sarah and Walter planning to marry?
11. On average, how long does it take Sarah to type the menus?
12. Why does Sarah cry over the menu when she reads the word “dandelions”?
13. What does Sarah write on the menu instead of “dandelions with hard-boiled egg”?



**ON THE CONTINENT PEOPLE HAVE GOOD FOOD;
IN ENGLAND, PEOPLE HAVE GOOD TABLE MANNERS**



George Mikes
British journalist, humourist and writer



SPEAKING TASKS

1. Work in small groups. Swap your ideas about the story and present them in class.

1. How did the main character resolve their conflict and grow as a person?

2. What is the theme, statement, the lesson or moral of the story?

3. Dandelions are connected to love according to folklore. Indeed, it is said that you can determine whether you are loved or not by blowing the seeds of a dandelion globe. If you can blow all the seeds off with one blow, then you are loved. If some remain, then you are loved with reservations. If a lot of those seeds still remain, then you are not loved at all.

2. Take a minute to think about the reason why the main character in the story could have mistyped the word Dandelion and write Dearest Walter instead. Why dandelion and not any other word?

FINGER LICKING GOOD

Meaning

VERY TASTY

MY MOTHER MAKES THE BEST
LASAGNA IN THE WORLD.
IT'S **FINGER LICKING GOOD**.

FROM SOUP TO NUTS

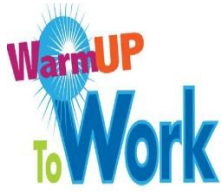
Meaning

FROM BEGINNING TO END

SHE TOLD US EVERYTHING ABOUT
HER TRIP, **FROM SOUP TO NUTS**



Unit 4. ADVENTUROUS DINING



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- What kind of café, restaurants, bars do you like to go to?
- How often do you go out to eat?
- Many people say that cooking and eating at home is better for the individual and the family than eating out in restaurants or canteens. Do you agree or disagree?
- Do you like trying new foods? Why?
- Do you like Western food? What kind?
- Do you like any other international food? What?
- What kind of food do you dislike? Why?

Make a list of some unusual dishes that you have eaten or heard about. Do you know about any unusual restaurants? Think about an unusual location, an unusual menu, an unusual way of serving, etc.

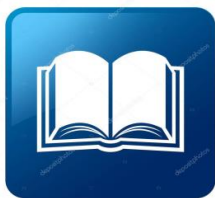


WHILE READING TASKS

Look at the following titles from the article:

1. An Exciting Dinner.
2. A Restaurant with a View.
3. A Theatrical Experience.
4. An Unusual Setting.

What would you expect to find at these restaurants? Read to check your ideas.



READING FOCUS 1

THE BEST OF WEIRD AND WONDERFUL DINING

Tired of eating at the same boring restaurants? Looking for a change? Here are some restaurants that offer original menus, original locations, and original service for an... yes, you guessed it, original restaurant experience. See for yourself which ones you fancy.

An Exciting Dinner

Looking for something adventurous? The **Archipelago** in London is just the thing for you. At £10.50, the most popular meal in this restaurant is crocodile. Yes, you read it correctly, crocodile. It is served with a yellow plum dip. If that is not daring enough for you, there are plenty of other dishes on the menu. If you are feeling brave, try the “Love Bug Salad” or a delicious plate of locusts and crickets for just £7.50. Good luck.

A Restaurant with a View

Want to enjoy the sights while you’re eating? Try **The Top of the World Restaurant**. At 800 feet (244 m) above Las Vegas, diners can enjoy a spectacular view of Las Vegas in this revolving restaurant. However, the real adventure starts at the end of the meal. That’s when the customers are taken from their seats at ground level to the observation rooms in elevators that travel at a remarkable speed. Hold on to your stomach!

A Theatrical Experience

Longing for dinner with some drama? Dine with mimes at **Mim** in Barcelona. The service is unique. Your waiter will communicate your order in mime and keep you entertained with performances in between courses. The location is also special. Customers eat in theatrical surroundings. Now the question is, how do you mime “I’ll have the lobster, please”?

An Unusual Setting

Welcome to the Maldives and the first underwater restaurant in the world. The **Ithaa Undersea Restaurant** on Rangali Island sits five metres below the Indian Ocean. Ithaa means ‘pearl’ in the Maldivian language and the guests are like pearls in a glass oyster. The views are spectacular. In the crystal-blue sea, a few metres from your head, there are sharks, sting rays, turtles, and thousands of tropical fish looking at you as you eat. There is also a fabulous coral garden to add to the colour. The experience is both romantic and magical – and you can guess what’s on the menu!

The Guardian
<https://www.theguardian.com>



POST-READING TASK

Read the text again scanning it for specific information.

Which restaurant from the article...

- 1) includes a show during the meal?
- 2) has an interesting menu?
- 3) features a utility that you wouldn't expect to find in a restaurant?
- 4) includes a free ride?
- 5) requires customers to order in an unusual way?



SPEAKING TASKS

1. Which restaurant from the article would you try? Why? Which restaurant wouldn't you like to try? Why not?
2. Which are more popular in your country: fast food restaurants or traditional restaurants?
3. What is the best local restaurant you have ever eaten at?
4. Have you ever eaten at a restaurant and not tipped?
5. Some people say that food in an expensive restaurant is always better than food in a cheap restaurant – would you agree?
6. What is the best and worst restaurant food you've ever had?
7. Have you ever eaten at a restaurant abroad? What was it like?
8. What are the main differences and similarities of dining out in Great Britain, the USA and in Belarus?



READING FOCUS 2

LONDON PUBS AND RESTAURANTS: BEST FOOD AND PLACES TO EAT OUT

Read this passage, and match the names of the restaurants and bars in bold with the type of establishment they are on the next page.

There are lots of different places where you can eat out. Let's start with the High Street, which has the highest concentration of restaurants in London. First of all, at number 7 you will find '**Wok and Roll**', which specialises in food from Beijing and Canton. You can't actually eat your food here, but they put your food in special containers that keep it hot until you get it home. Next door at number 9 is '**Curry in a Hurry**', the best place in town for spicy dishes from south Asia. Opposite, at number 11, is '**Wetback's**', which does excellent fajitas, burritos, quesadillas and chillis, and two doors further down is '**Frank's Plaice**', which does lovely crispy battered cod and haddock in the good old traditional British style. There's also '**The Big Munch**' nearby. This place is fine if you are in a hurry and need something quick to eat, but I personally wouldn't touch their burgers, fries and fried chicken without really good insurance: their food hygiene record is really terrible! However, if you like good American food, check out '**Superman**', which is behind the supermarket. There are only six tables, so get there early. Great State-side cooking, and really friendly service.

At the end of the street, there's a new Spanish place, '**Bar Celona**'; as the name suggests, it's a bar rather than a restaurant, but you can get lots of small dishes to eat while you drink. If you want a proper sit-down Spanish meal, try '**Alhambra**' nearby. Their paella and gazpacho are particularly good. Directly opposite is '**Wasabi-Go!**', which is a great place if you like Japanese-style raw fish; their nigiri and temaki are the best I've ever tasted! Also on the High Street, you'll find the Westbridge Shopping Centre, and on the first floor you'll find '**Tastes**'. This is the perfect place to eat if you've been shopping in the centre, as there are lots of different outlets selling different kinds of cooked food; you buy what you like and then eat in a central seating area. The food is good and cheap, and there is a huge variety.

Denmark Street is at the end of High Street. There are no restaurants here, but '**The Red Lion**' is a great place for a drink before or after dinner. It's very traditional: no jukebox, no fruit machines and absolutely no big-screen television. Oh, and the beer there is out of this world.

Go to the end of Denmark Street, and you'll get to Mill Street. There are several more places to eat here, starting with '**Mamma Mia's**' at number 4: when it comes to the perfect pizza, the chef in this restaurant knows the importance of having a really good thin and crispy base and fresh toppings. If you like Italian

food, you could also try **‘Pasta Master’** at number 8. Their speciality is pasta, of course, but they also do wonderful meat, including a veal dish which is really good. For those who prefer French food, you have **‘Aux Trois Cloches’** at number 6. This is a small, informal, friendly place with good tasty cooking at very reasonable prices. If you have money to burn, you could try the much more formal **‘Le Poisson d’Or’** at number 18 (although be warned, even the starters won’t cost you less than £20 each, and the waiters are a bit snobby, especially the sommelier and the Maitre d’. And they won’t let you in without a jacket and tie).

Mill Street leads to Venice Square, and there are a few more places here. For a traditional British roast dinner, I would recommend **‘Silverthorne’s’**. You help yourself to a selection of vegetables and sauces or gravies from a buffet, and then a chef cuts you a portion of beef or lamb. For something equally British but less extravagant, you might like to try **‘Rosie Lee’s’** for a nice cup of tea and a slice of cake (or you could try their wonderful cream teas). On the other side of the square is **‘Jimmy’s’**, where you can get things like pies, sandwiches and light meals. The best place to eat here, however, is **‘The George and Dragon’**. This used to be a terrible place: warm beer, the stink of cigarette smoke, fights on a Saturday night. Then two years ago it was bought by a professional chef and he’s turned it round completely. You can still drink here, but there’s now also a restaurant section serving superb food. Last month the chef received his first Michelin star!

The station is just behind Venice Square. If you’re waiting for a train and you’re hungry, you could go to **‘Choo-Choo’s’**, which is in the station itself. However, unless you like stale pork pies, sandwiches that curl at the corners and coffee that tastes like mud, I would avoid this place.

<https://www.thesun.co.uk>

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Wok and Roll | tapas bar |
| 2. Curry in a Hurry | food court |
| 3. Wetback’s | tea room |
| 4. Frank’s Plaice | buffet |
| 5. The Big Munch | pizzeria |
| 6. Souperman | Tex-Mex restaurant |
| 7. Bar Celona | Fish and chip shop |
| 8. Alhambra | gastropub |
| 9. Wasabi-Go! | snack bar |
| 10. Tastes | relais |
| 11. The Red Lion | diner |
| 12. Mamma Mia’s | sushi bar |
| 13. Pasta Master | fast food restaurant |
| 14. Aux Trois Cloches | Indian restaurant |
| 15. Le Poisson d’Or | bodega |
| 16. Silverthorne’s | pub |
| 17. Rosie Lee’s | Chinese takeaway |
| 18. Jimmy’s | bistro |
| 19. The George and Dragon | carvery |
| 20. Choo choo’s | trattoria |

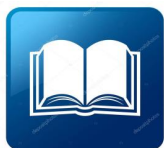


WRITING FOCUS

Describe the best restaurant / café / pub you have eaten at (the interior design, service, external environment, dishes that are served in the restaurant, memorable events that you celebrated there).

Explain why is it your favourite place.

Some of the common features that people like about a restaurant are: delicious dishes; reasonable prices; easy to go there from home; quiet and nice environment; attractive decoration and view; playground for kids; open space; privacy; service and behaviour of the staffs; special treats for the regular customer; a variety of dishes; past memory related to the restaurant; recommendations from friends and family members; discounts, etc..



READING FOCUS 3

A LA CARTE MENU AND DINING AT THE SAVOY

Welcome to the Michelin-starred Savoy Restaurant, where the finest cuisine is consumed in the most spectacular of settings. With sparkling chandeliers, towering marble columns and soaring floor to ceiling windows overlooking the calm oasis of Green Park, the elegant Savoy Restaurant is widely considered to be one of the most beautiful dining rooms in the world.

Home to hundreds of years of Hollywood and history, the Savoy has been a restaurant of choice for some of the world's most famous faces. Winston Churchill, James Dean, and Marilyn Monroe have all passed through its gilded doors, not to mention Frank Sinatra, Oscar Wilde and Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II herself.

Showcasing the finest seasonal ingredients and quality produce of the British Isles, the menu features long-standing favourites such as steamed Steak & Kidney suet pudding and hearty Lord Woolton pie, alongside salt-baked Lincolnshire beets and hand-dived Scottish scallops, and larder staples like Gentleman's Relish, Pease Pudding, and Potted Shrimp.

<https://www.thesavoylondon.com/restaurant>



SPEAKING TASKS

Look though the menu of Savoy Restaurant and recommend a dish or drink for these customers.

1. I am a vegetarian and I want a starter but I don't like soup. What starter should I choose?

2. I really love seafood. Which main course do you suggest?
3. I want a dessert but I don't like sweet things. What can I choose?
4. It's a really hot day and I need a cold drink. I only have £5, though. What can I have?
5. What would you order from this menu? What type of restaurants are popular in your country?

SAVOY GRILL



STARTERS

- Cornish crab salad, brown crab mayonnaise, toasted brioche £20
- Lobster bisque, charlotte potatoes, fresh herbs £17
- Steak tartare, confit egg yolk, pickles, game chips £21
- Baked Dorset snails, sweet garlic, red wine, brioche crumb £14
- Aquitaine caviar "St James's" - Maison Prunier 30g or 50g £95/£165
- Smoked Haddock glazed omelette Arnold Bennett £12
- Heritage beetroots, goat's cheese, bitter leaves, honey and truffle dressing £15
- Foie gras and chicken liver parfait, grape chutney, toasted brioche £17
- Severn and Wye smoked salmon, rye bread, crème fraîche £16



FISH

- Dover sole 16oz, grilled or meunière £49
- Cornish Halibut, clam velouté, sea vegetables £40
- BBQ monkfish tail, tomato, chilli and coconut sauce, fried mustard seeds £36



SHELLFISH

- Native rock oysters, six or twelve £20/£40
- Grilled lobster thermidor or garlic butter half or whole £35/ £70



ROASTS, BRAISES AND PIES

- Steak, onion and ale pudding, shallot gravy £26
- Beef Wellington, red wine jus (for two) £94 (please allow 45 minutes)
- Roast guinea fowl and pickled red cabbage £28
- Roasted Herdwick lamb rump, braised belly, aubergine and mint yoghurt £32
- Confit chicken and ham hock pie, grain mustard, tarragon velouté £26



FROM THE TROLLEY DAILY

Available every day at lunch and all day on Sundays - served with seasonal vegetables and potatoes

MONDAY	Glazed Suffolk ham, Dijon sauce £22
TUESDAY	Roast suckling pig, grain mustard sauce £28
WEDNESDAY	Beef Wellington, horseradish cream £36
THURSDAY	Suffolk rack of pork, apple sauce £32
FRIDAY	Salmon coulibiac, parsley sauce £26
SATURDAY	Stuffed leg of lamb, mint sauce £28
SUNDAY	Roasted sirloin, Yorkshire pudding £36



SIDE ORDERS

Hand cut or skinny chips
Mashed potatoes
Honey glazed carrots
Seasonal greens
Cauliflower cheese gratin
Roast field mushrooms, garlic butter
Butter lettuce, apple cider vinaigrette

DESSERTS

Crêpes Suzette, with orange, Grand Marnier, chocolate ice cream £14.00
Piedmont hazelnut mille feuille £12.00
Chocolate, frangipane and marmalade tartelette, salted caramel ice cream £10.00
Apple Tart Tatin, vanilla ice cream £22.00 (for 2)
Passion fruit and lime baked Alaska £14.00
Selection of Ice Creams and Sorbets £8.00
Tea £1.00
Cafe Latte £3.00
Cappuccino..... £3.00
Espresso..... £2.50
Pepsi/Lemonade £2.00
Fruit juice..... £2.90
Bottle Water £1.50

Ale

any of various types of beer, usually one that is dark and bitter

Baked Alaska



a dish consisting of a cake base with ice cream on top covered with meringue (a mixture made of sugar and the white part of eggs) that is cooked for a very short time at a high temperature

Bitterleaf



bitterleaf has a sweet and bitter taste and is rich in protein and vitamins. It is a typical ingredient in soup

Brioche



soft, slightly sweet bread made with eggs and butter

Charlotte



a type of sweet dish made with layer of fruit and bread, cake, or biscuits in a special shaped container

Chutney

a mixture containing fruit, spices, sugar, and vinegar, eaten cold with meat or cheese

Clam



a type of sea creature with a shell in two parts that can close together tightly, and a soft body that can be eaten

Confit

meat cooked slowly in its own fat

Coulbiac



a Russian dish of rich pastry with a filling of salmon or other fish and mushrooms, onions, egg, buckwheat, dill, etc.

Crème fraîche

a type of thick cream with a slightly sour taste

Crêpes suzette



crêpes rolled or folded in a hot, orange-flavored sauce and usually served in flaming brandy

Dijon sauce

it is an emulsion of egg yolk, melted butter, and lemon juice (or a white wine or vinegar reduction). It is usually seasoned with salt, and pepper

Dover sole



a food fish found in the East Pacific

Egg yolk

the yellow part of an egg

Foie gras

the liver of a goose or duck that has been fed to make it fat, eaten as food

Frangipane

a thick mixture of sugar, eggs, and butter mixed with almonds, used in making desserts and cakes

Game bird



a bird, such as a pheasant or grouse, that is widely hunted

Grand marnier

a French cognac-based liqueur with an orange flavor

Guinea fowl



a large grey and white African bird, kept for its eggs and meat

Halibut



a big, flat sea fish that can be eaten

Hock

the meat on the lower leg of an animal

Jus

a sauce, gravy (French)

Lobster thermidor



a dish consisting of lobster fish, mushrooms, etc. in a thick, creamy sauce, browned and served in half of a lobster shell

Meunière

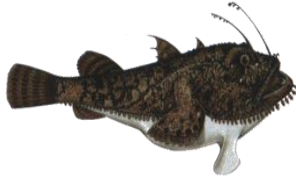
fish prepared by being rolled in flour, etc., fried in butter, and sprinkled with lemon juice and chopped parsley

Mille-feuille



a small pastry consisting of many thin layers of puff pastry, filled with custard, whipped cream, fruit, purée, etc.

Monkfish



a saltwater fish of which only the tail meat is eaten

Omelette Arnold Bennett

an omelette containing smoked haddock

Oyster



a large flat sea creature that lives in a shell, some types of which can be eaten either cooked or uncooked, and other types of which produce pearls

Parfait



a cold sweet food made from sugar eggs, cream, and usually other flavours such as fruit or alcohol

Pickle

vegetables or fruit that have been preserved been in a vinegar sauce or salty water

Rack

a large piece of meat cut from the neck of a sheep or pig

Salmon



one of the most popular fin fish, rich, oily and highly flavorful

Shallot



a type of small onion

Sirloin

the best meat from the lower back of a cow

Tarragon



a plant with whitish flowers whose narrow leaves tastes similar to liquorice and are used in cooking as a herb

Tartare



(of fish or meat) served without being cooked

Tarte tatin



a famous French upside-down apple tart made by covering the bottom of a shallow baking dish with butter and sugar, then apples and finally a pastry crust.

Truffle

fleshy, edible, potato-shaped mushrooms that grow under ground

Velouté

a rich white sauce or soup made from stock, egg yolks, and cream

Sell like hot cakes

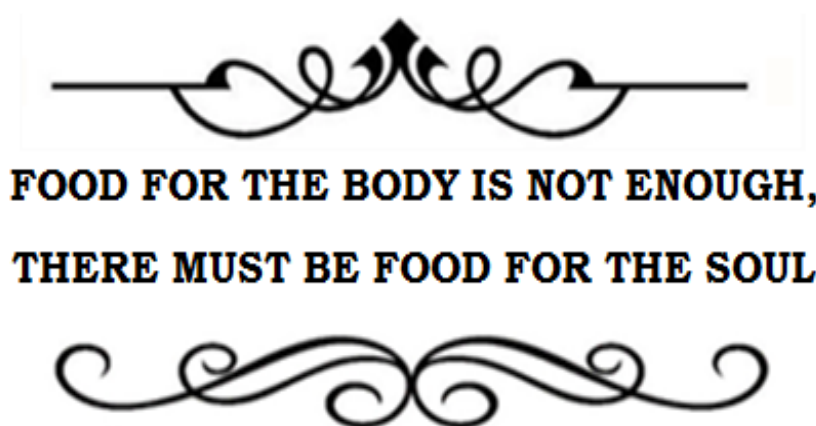
Meaning

To sell quickly
and in large numbers.

His new single sold like hot cakes
on the first day after its release.



A balanced diet
is a piece of cake...
in each hand.



**FOOD FOR THE BODY IS NOT ENOUGH,
THERE MUST BE FOOD FOR THE SOUL**



LANGUAGE FOCUS

DINNER'S ON ME: ENTERTAINING AND EATING OUT

A. Paying the bill

1. We'll **split the bill**, shall we? [either each person will pay for himself/herself, or the bill will be divided equally between all the participants]
2. Lunch **is on me** today. [I am paying for you]
3. Would you like to **join us** for dinner at the City Plaza hotel? [come with us]
4. We'd like you to **be our guest**. [we will pay]
5. Let me **get this**. [pay the bill]
6. I was **wined and dined** every night by the New York office. [invited out to restaurants]

B. Describing service

A new Italian restaurant called Bella Roma has just opened in the High Street, and we went there the other night to try it. I couldn't help comparing it to the Casa Italia, where we ate last week. In the Bella Roma, the service was **impeccable** and quick; at the Casa Italia it's always a bit **sluggish**. In the new place the waiters are **courteous** and friendly without being **overbearing**. In the other place they tend to be **sullen** and the service is rather **brusque**, which I find very **off-putting**. But at Bella Roma they'll **go out of their way** to give you what you want.



impeccable – perfect, cannot be faulted

sluggish – rather slow

courteous – polite, makes you feel you do not want to go there again

overbearing – too confident, too inclined to tell people what to do

sullen – bad-tempered, unwilling to smile

brusque – quick and rude

off-putting – makes you feel you do not want to go there again

go out of their way – do everything possible

C. Food preferences

1. I **have a sweet tooth** and can never say no to cakes or biscuits. [love sweet things]
2. I won't have dessert, thanks. You're lucky being so slim, but I'm afraid I have to **count the calories** / I have to be a bit **calorie-conscious** these days. [be careful how many calories I eat]
3. I'll just have a small **portion** of dessert, please. [amount of a particular food that is served to one person]
4. I like to end the meal with something **savoury**, like cheese. [salty in flavour, or with herbs]
5. Ben's a bit of a **fussy eater**. [person who has very particular demands when eating]
6. No, thanks, I won't have wine. I'm **teetotal**. [never drink alcohol]
7. Before I book the restaurant, do you have any particular **dietary requirements**? [special needs or things someone cannot eat]
8. I won't have any more wine, thanks. I don't want to **overdo it**. [eat or drink too much]

D. Entertaining at home

Ann: Why not come home and eat with us? You'll have to **take pot luck**, though. [eat what we're eating, nothing special]

Kate: Thank you. Should I wear a suit on Friday?

Ann: No, no, it isn't a **dinner party**, it's just an **informal get-together**. [rather formal dinner with guests] [informal group of people meeting for a meal/drinks, etc.]

Diana: Does anyone want **seconds**? [a second helping/serving of a dish]

Mark : Oh, yes please. It was delicious.

Diana: Help yourself to some **nibbles**. [things like nuts, crisps, etc., before a meal]

Ann: We have to leave at six. We can **grab a bite to eat** on the way. [have a quick meal]

Kate: Or we could get a **takeaway** when we get there. [ready-cooked meal bought to take home]

<https://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>



POST-READING TASK

1. Rewrite the parts of these sentences in bold using expressions from A opposite.

1. When we eat out as a group, **each person usually pays for their own food and drink.**
2. Let me **pay for this one.** You can pay next time.
3. Visitors to the company's head office in London are always **taken out to** the best restaurants.
4. **Fancy coming with us** for lunch tomorrow?
5. No, please. Put your credit card away. **I'm inviting you for dinner.**
6. **I'd like to pay for you** at the restaurant tomorrow.

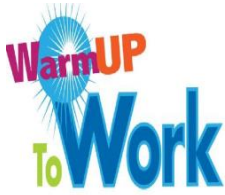
3. Rewrite the parts of these sentences in bold using expressions from the opposite page to describe food and drink preferences.

1. I **never drink alcohol.**
2. I **don't really like sweet things.**
3. **Are there things you can't or mustn't eat?**
4. Just a small **amount of food** (use one word) for me, please. I don't want to **eat too much.**
5. She's become **very careful about how many calories she's eating.**
6. Sasha is such a **choosy person when it comes to food.** It's difficult to find things she likes.

4. Give words from the opposite page which contrast with or are the opposite of these phrases.

1. A sweet dish.
2. A friendly waiter.
3. A formal gathering.
4. Rude staff.
5. Quick service.
6. Dreadful service.

Unit 5. FAST FOOD VS SLOW FOOD



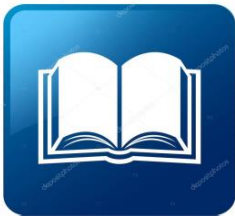
WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss famous sayings about food in small groups.

- Do you have a healthy diet? Why or why not?
- Read the title of the article and then take one minute to skim the text.

What do you think the article will be about? Share your ideas with a partner.

- Where do most students in your college or university eat?
- What does a typical meal consist of? What do students eat between meals?
- Are they generally concerned about health and nutrition while they are in college? Why or why not?
- Do you think that universities should provide nutrition information to students? Why or why not?
- Considering the wide variety of food options available at colleges and universities in the USA, do you think that students there have the opportunity to eat well? Why or why not?



READING FOCUS 1

STUDENTS WON'T GIVE UP THEIR FRENCH FRIES

On a recent summer night at the local Dairy Queen in Moorhead, Minnesota, Debra Lee-Cadwell, the director of dining services at Concordia College, felt a tap on her shoulder. She turned around to find a young man she didn't recognize holding up an ice-cream cone.

"He asked me if it was a red, yellow, or green" says Ms. Lee-Cardwell, who realized the young man was a student at Concordia, where she has added color-coded labels to all dining-hall foods to inform students of fat content. Yellow means low fat (less than 5 grams), green indicates medium fat content (5 to 13 grams), and red is for high-fat foods (more than 13 grams).

"I told him it was a red, but that was OK, as long as it was in moderation," says Ms. Lee-Cardwell, who is a registered dietitian.

Perhaps it is an attempt to avoid gaining the dreaded “freshman 15¹,” but students around the country are demanding more information about the foods they’re served in dining halls, and they’re asking for a greater variety of healthy fare, according to college officials. Over the past few years, colleges have responded by hiring more dietitians and nutritionists and going to greater lengths to provide students with information about the caloric and fat content of the food they eat.

But despite the wealth of information, students don’t appear to be any healthier than their predecessors. “They may be more health conscious, but that doesn’t necessarily mean that they’re eating healthy,” says Robin L. Porter, the president of H. David Porter Associates Inc., an independent food consulting business based in Crofton, Maryland, that works with 70 colleges. “They talk the talk, but don’t really walk the walk – french fries outsell apples by thousands and thousands of pounds.’

Some even worry that the feast of information can be harmful, by feeding some students’ obsession with food.

Information and Options

Several colleges have recently purchased software called NetNutrition, from the company CBord, which allows students to click through the dining-hall menus on their college’s Web site and learn the preparation method, ingredients, nutrients, and health information for every dish served.

For example, a student at the University of Southern California using the Web site one day this month could have chosen among Thai beef salad (144 calories, 4.2 grams of fat), vegetarian sloppy joes (362 calories, 5.1 grams of fat), and Japanese spinach (at 47 calories, 1.9 grams of fat), or opted for classic American favorites like cheeseburgers (436 calories, 35.8 grams of fat) and pepperoni pizza (241 calories, 18 grams of fat), to name a few dishes. USC has even set up kiosks in one of its dining halls to allow students to check the Web site with their dinner trays in hand, and other colleges are installing similar kiosks. Even at USC, however, pizza is still the most popular item, says Michael P. Gratz, the director of hospitality services. He says burgers and fries are being consumed as much as ever.

More Variety

It’s not that students lack food options. The university’s 29 dining halls boast condiment² bars with kimchi³ and four different types of mayonnaise.

“Ethnic foods and ingredients are also increasingly popular,” says Haddon Reines, vice president of health care and education for U.S. Foodservice Inc., a food distributor based in Columbia, Maryland. “Students have grown up eating a wider array of foods, and it’s no longer uncommon for sushi to be in dining halls.”

¹15 pounds (6.8 kilograms) that American students fear they will gain during their first year at college or university

²a substance such as a spice that you add to food to improve its taste

³a Korean dish made from fermented cabbage or other raw vegetables, garlic, and chillies

Fries and a Coke

Still, the three items that top U.S. Foodservice's list of most frequently ordered foods are chicken tenders, french fries, and carbonated beverages.

"Some days I feel like I'm banging my head against a wall," says Ms. Lee-Cadwell of Concordia, which is also setting up electronic kiosks. "The students talk out of both sides of their mouths. They say they want nutrition and variety, but then they gravitate to their familiar favorites – the pizza, the burgers, and the fried chicken strips."

Or they take an opposite approach, nutrition experts say, and become so preoccupied with food that they barely eat anything.

"There definitely seems to be two extremes," says Stephanie Horvath, a senior at the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. "A lot of people eat the burgers and fries... and then there are people who gasp onto what they think is healthy and don't eat balanced meals."

Ms. Horvath recalls that her two roommates freshman years would brag about how "good" they had been on a given day because they ate nothing but a piece of bread. Another friend ate only salads, and "couldn't figure out why she always had stomach aches and digestive problems," says Ms. Horvath.

What Ms. Horvath and many college dietitians and nutritionists observe is part of a national trend. Although it is difficult to say what percentage of college students have eating disorders or struggle with obesity, many college nutritionists say they notice a growing number of students splitting into two camps of unhealthy eaters: overweight fast-food junkies, or obsessive dieters, who either binge and purge or nearly starve themselves.

"It's sort of like everything else in our country" says Christine Economos, an assistant professor of nutrition at Tufts University who specializes in the study of college students' eating habits. "There's a public health crisis with obesity, and there's also more eating disorders, and in both cases the underlying cause is the same in that it's emotional and started before they set foot on campus."

Striving for Moderation

The problems of compulsive overeating and undereating have the same underlying cause, health officials say: They both show an inability to eat in moderation. Consequently, experts like Ronda Bokram, the staff nutritionist at the student health center at Michigan State University, say the availability of nutritional information does little or nothing to influence students' eating habits.

The students who should be paying attention to nutritional information are ignoring it, Ms. Bokram says, while the ones that pay attention care too much. "I would do anything to get rid of things like kiosks," says Ms. Bokram. "I have students say they won't eat foods that have a certain amount of fat grams in them, and that's just unhealthy. I think giving students that information sends the wrong message. It's important to teach people to eat without labels."

Students tend to disagree. Lindsey McAdams, a senior at Meredith College, in Raleigh, N.C., says that she wishes the dining halls at her college provided such information. If it had been available, she adds, it might have helped her make more informed eating decisions her freshman year, when she gained more than 30 pounds.

And Ms. Horvath, at Chapel Hill, points out that such information is no different from labels on foods in the supermarket.

“If they’re going to make it mandatory for you to be on meal plan, they have an obligation to tell you what’s in the food they’re serving,” she says.

Meanwhile, college nutritionists and dietitians will continue to emphasize moderation as a key to healthy eating, both at college and beyond.

As Nancy Ellson, a nutritionists at William Peterson University, in Wayne, N.J., puts it: “It’s easy to give the students nutritional information, but it’s hard to impart to them the understanding that food is the one thing they have to make peace with in their lives. ... Unlike other things they may develop addictions to, food is the one thing they can’t give up for the rest of their lives.”

The Chronicle of Higher Education
<https://www.chronicle.com>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Multiple choice. For each item below, circle the two best answers.

1. The main idea of this article is: ...
 - a) students in some American universities have bad eating habits;
 - b) college students can do several things in order to avoid gaining weight;
 - c) there are pros and cons to inform students about nutrition;
 - d) American university students have eating disorders for a variety of reasons.
2. American students are demanding more information about the food they eat at college because
 - e) they are concerned about nutrition;
 - f) they want to eat more international foods;
 - g) they don't want to gain weight;
 - h) their parents want to pay less.
3. Colleges have responded to students’ concerns by
 - a) providing students with more information about caloric and fat content of foods;
 - b) making more burgers and fries available after hours;
 - c) providing diet and exercise programs to help students lose weight;
 - d) hiring more dietitians and nutritionists.

4. The fact that french fries outsell apples by thousands of pounds implies that despite students' apparent interest in eating healthy foods, ...
- e) they are eating more fruits and vegetables;
 - f) they are beginning to enjoy more ethnic foods;
 - g) they are not eating more healthy foods;
 - h) they are not cutting down on fatty foods.
5. The ways colleges and universities provide nutrition information to students include
- a) adding color-coded labels to dining-hall foods;
 - b) setting computer kiosks where students can check nutrition Websites;
 - c) adding a wide variety of international and ethnic foods;
 - d) playing videos in the dining halls that promote healthy living.
6. Recent studies of eating habits of American college students indicate that many young people have problems with
- a) their roommates;
 - b) obesity;
 - c) eating disorders;
 - d) money.
7. Public health experts agree that eating disorders
- a) are caused by poor nutrition;
 - b) are caused by emotional problems;
 - c) are a major issue on American campuses;
 - d) begin when students arrive on campus.

2. Match the words with their definitions

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. calories | a. sandwich made of ground beef mixed with tomato sauce;
vegetarian style is made with soy; |
| 2. sloppy joes | b. units for measuring the energy that a certain amount of food;
will provide; |
| 3. condiment | c. breaded and fried strips of chicken meat; |
| 4. chicken tenders | d. flavored drinks with chemically produced bubbles (such as Coca-Cola, Pepsi, etc.); |
| 5. carbonated beverages | e. an extra substance like sauce or seasoning added to food;
to improve its flavor. |

3. Work with a partner to answer the questions below.

1. According to the article, some experts are worried that making too much information about nutrition available to students can actually be harmful. Do you agree or disagree? Why?

2. Considering the wide variety of food options available at colleges and universities in the United States, do you think students there have the opportunity to eat well? Why or why not?

3. The author states that the problems related to overeating and undereating are both caused by the inability to eat in moderation. / Why do you think that so many American students have this problems?



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. The sentences below contain idiomatic expressions (in boldface type). Read the whole sentence and choose the best meaning for the expression. Circle the letter for your answer.

1. The students **talk out of both sides of their mouths**. They say they want nutrition and variety, but then they gravitate to their familiar favorites.

- a) talk while they are eating;
- b) support each other;
- c) say one thing but do another.

2. “A lot of people eat the burgers and fries ... and then there are people who **grasp onto** what they think is healthy and don’t eat balanced meals.”

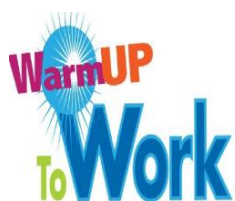
- a) give up;
- b) strongly believe in;
- c) don’t care.

3. There’s a public-health crisis with obesity, and there’s also more eating disorders, and in both cases the underlying cause is the same in that it’s emotional and started before they **set foot on campus**.

- a) apply to a university or college;
- b) arrive at university or college;
- c) join an exercise program at the college.

2. Match each boldfaced food idiom with its correct definition.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. The test was a piece of cake . I am sure I got A on it. | a. a very lazy person |
| 2. I was a couch potato all weekend. I didn't do anything but watch TV. | b. two things that are completely different |
| 3. Jack is really upset about his grade. We've been walking on eggshells around his all day. | c. extremely easy |
| 4. I have a lot on my plate write no. I am taking six classes this semester, and I work 20 hours a week. | d. being very careful not to upset someone |
| 5. College is nothing like high school. They are like apples and oranges . | e. many thing going on at once |



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss famous sayings about food in small groups.

- “When one has tasted watermelon, he knows what the angels eat.”

Mark Twain

Do you like watermelon? Do you think it's such a wonderful food? What food do you like best? Do you think your favorite food is good enough for angels to eat? Ask your friends, see what they think!

- “There is no love sincerer than the love of food.” *George Bernard Shaw*

Do you we can really love another person as much as we love food? We will die without food, but will we die without the person we love the most?

- “No man is lonely while eating spaghetti; it requires so much attention.”

Christopher Morley

The kind of food we eat can have a strange effect on our feelings. Are there any foods that make you happy? Are there any foods that make you sad? Any foods that make you ready to fight? Do you really think we can avoid loneliness while eating spaghetti?

- “One should eat to live, not live to eat.” *Moliere*

What happens to people who “live to eat”? How can we “eat to live”? What should we do? What are some specific things to avoid? Have your eating habits changed during your life?

Discuss in small groups.

- What do you understand by fast food?
- Do you know what slow food means?
- What kind of food do you prefer: fast food or slow food?
- What are the benefits of eating a balanced diet?
- How can people be encouraged to eat more healthily?



BEFORE READING TASK

You are going to read two articles about food. Here are the headings: “Convenience food can be useful, some of it may even taste good, but watch out for those hidden ingredients” and “The rise of slow food”. Can you predict what the articles are about?

How many words and expressions with “food” are you familiar with? Match the words with their definitions.

fast food	convenience food	junk food	cook-chill
food additive	functional food	organic food	staple foods

1) food that needs little preparation, especially food that has been pre-prepared and preserved for long-term storage;

2) food that needs little preparation, especially food that has been pre-prepared and preserved for long-term storage;

3) food that requires little preparation before being served;

4) any of various natural or synthetic substances, such as salt, monosodium glutamate, or citric acid, used in the commercial processing of food as preservatives, antioxidants, emulsifiers, etc., in order to preserve or add flavour, colour, or texture to processed food;

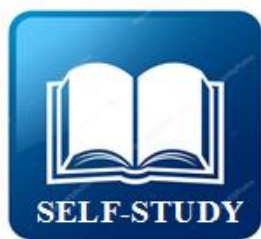
5) basic foodstuffs, daily foods;

6) food that is low in nutritional value, often highly processed or ready-prepared, and eaten instead of or in addition to well-balanced meals;

7) food containing additives which provide extra nutritional value. Also called: nutraceutical;

8) any substance containing nutrients, such as carbohydrates, proteins, and fats, that can be ingested by a living organism and metabolized into energy and body tissue;

9) a method of food preparation used by caterers, in which cooked dishes are chilled rapidly and reheated as required.



READING FOCUS 2

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

CONVENIENCE FOOD CAN BE USEFUL. SOME OF IT MAY EVEN TASTE GOOD. BUT WATCH OUT FOR THOSE HIDDEN INGREDIENTS

On a camping trip to Iceland a few years ago, I took lots of dried processed food with me. The packets of pasta, risotto and soup were very useful because it wasn't always possible to find a shop to buy fresh food. I was surprised how good that food tasted when served hot. It was much better than I expected

Processed food is now much better than it was when I was a child. Then it didn't have much taste and it had a strange texture. Clearly, the food scientists at the large food companies have worked very hard to improve processed food products. Today, our supermarkets are full of cold, frozen or dried ready meals. Lots of people buy these products every week. But the strange thing is that they are not on a camping trip. They eat processed, ready meals all the time.

Why do so many people seem to prefer factory produced food to fresh food? Some experts say that the food companies have addicted people to snacks and ready meals. Food scientists talk about something called the bliss factor for example. When a product has the bliss factor, it gives people great pleasure and they want more. The bliss factor happens when food contains the right amount of fat, sugar and salt. Unfortunately, large quantities of these ingredients are bad for our health.

In recent years, food companies have put less fat, sugar and salt in their products. But people who eat lots of ready meals and snacks still risk serious health problems such as diabetes, heart disease and cancer.

Processed food also contains a lot of additives. These are necessary so that the product will be safe to eat for a long time. Additives also improve the flavour, texture and colour of the product. Some additives are natural, but others are possibly artificial chemicals and they may be harmful to the body.

Some natural additives are things that most people would prefer not to eat. L-Cysteine, for example, is used in bread to make it stay soft and fresh. Most L-Cysteine comes from human hair. The hair is taken from barber shops and hair-dressing salons. L-Cysteine is used in the hamburger buns sold at McDonald's and Burger King. Boiled beetle shells are used to make a red food colouring.

If you don't want to eat these unpleasant food additives, you have to look carefully at the labels on the tin or packet. In general, a short list of ingredients is an indication of a less processed product. Some experts suggest the rule of five principles. So if a product has more than five ingredients, we shouldn't buy it. Even fresh products like minced beef sometimes have additives such as extra fat. It is always better to mince your own beef, or ask your butcher to do it for you.

People often buy ready meals because they say that they don't have time to cook. Television adverts show how fast and easy it is to serve a tasty family meal.

You simply warm it up in the microwave or put it in a pan for a few minutes. Of course, if you prepare a meal using fresh ingredients, it will take longer. But it may not take as long as you think. For example, you don't really save time when you use ready-made pasta sauce from a jar. You can easily make your own in about ten minutes. And that is about the time it takes for your pasta to cook.

Processed food is useful for camping or when you are very busy. But it is much better to cook your own meals using fresh ingredients. That way, you will know exactly what is in your food.

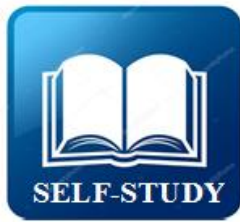
<https://www.theguardian.com>



POST-READING TASK

Are the following statements true or false?

1. The writer totally disapproves of convenience food.
2. Convenience food doesn't contain as much sugar, fat and salt as in the past.
3. L-Cysteine is an example of an artificial food additive.
4. If convenience food is red in colour, it might contain beetle shells.
5. Fat is sometimes added to some fresh meat products.



READING FOCUS 3

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

THE RISE OF SLOW FOOD

In Turin in northern Italy during the last week of October, the international Slow Food movement's exhibition will take place. Visitors to the exhibition will be able to try traditional kinds of food from different countries.

The Slow Food movement began in Italy in the 1980s. At that time, the first fast food "restaurants" were starting to open in big Italian cities. Some people did not like this new fashion for fast food. One of those people was Carlo Petrini, a food writer. He decided to start an organization called Slow Food. Slow Food is against fast food. The organization believes in the importance of slowness, but it has grown very fast! Slow Food now has 65,000 members in 45 different countries.

What is Slow Food all about? "Slow Food does not want everything to be the same. It wants to preserve different tastes and different kinds of food," says a Canadian member of the Slow Food movement.

Slow Food tries to promote natural methods of food production. It also promotes biodiversity. Nowadays, more and more kinds of plants and animals are disappearing. If there are different kinds of animals and plants, there are different tastes and different kinds of food.

The Slow Food movement tries to protect the world's variety of plants and animals. This is why every year it gives prizes to the people who work hardest to preserve biodiversity. The members of the Slow Food movement do not like our modern fast way of life. For this reason, the symbol of the Slow Food movement is the snail. Carlo Petrini thinks the snail is a perfect symbol for the Slow Food movement.

The Slow Food movement is international. But it is also very local. Slow Food members work in their own country or region. They organize activities to make people understand more about traditional food and natural methods of food production. Slow Food hopes that people will then change the way they eat. "People should think about what kind of food they buy and eat," says Jeff Crump, a Canadian Slow Food member. "It is important to know where food comes from. Shopkeepers will be happy to tell you if you ask them."

Other Slow Food activities are connected to tourism. Local Slow Food groups invite people to come and see a particular area so that they can learn about its food and way of life of the community. "The countryside in an area has a particular

appearance,” says Robert Bradley, a Slow Food member from the UK. “This appearance has been created because of a particular way of growing food and using the land... The Slow Food movement wants food to be good quality. It also wants there to be many different kinds of food. Nobody wants to travel to the other side of the world and eat the same things as at home!” A lot of people agree with the ideas of the Slow Food movement.

<https://www.bbc.co.uk>



POST-READING TASK

Are the following statements true or false?

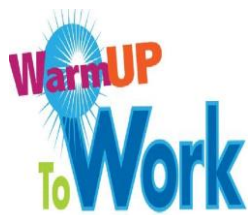
1. The Slow Food movement was started by Carlo Petrini.
2. Slow Food wants to try and preserve the variety of different kinds of food in the world.
3. Slow Food gives prizes to the people who create the best food.
4. Jeff Crump does not think that it is difficult to find out where food comes from.
5. Robert Bradley works as a travel agent for Slow Food.



SPEAKING TASK

1. Work in small groups. Make up a list of advantages and disadvantages of convenience food. Then swap your ideas in class.
2. What kind of food do you prefer: fast food or slow food? Give your reasons for and against. Present your ideas in class.

Unit 6. ORGANIC FOOD VS NON-ORGANIC FOOD



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- What do you understand by organic food?
- Do you know what functional food means?
- Do you ever buy it?
- Do you know what molecular gastronomy is? Have you ever tasted any dishes prepared using this scientific way of cooking?
- What kind of food do you prefer: organic food, non-organic or genetically modified food?
- Do you fancy how our food will change in the next 30 years? What kind of food will you eat?



BEFORE READING TASKS

You are going to read three articles about food. Here are the headings: “Advantages of organic food”, “Molecular gastronomy: where science meets cuisine” and “Food for thought: what will you be eating in 2050”. Can you predict what the articles are about?

How many words and expressions are you familiar with? Match the words with their definitions.

functional food

organic food

gastronomy

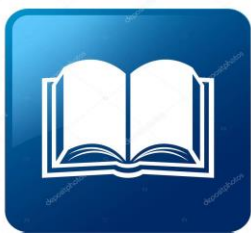
GM food

1) food relating to, or grown with the use of fertilizers or pesticides deriving from animal or vegetable matter, rather than from chemicals;

2) food containing additives which provide extra nutritional value. Also called nutraceutical;

3) the art of good eating; the type of cookery of a particular region;

4) genetically modified or genetically altered food, denoting or derived from an organism whose DNA has been altered for the purpose of improvement or correction of defects.



READING FOCUS 1

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

THE ADVANTAGES OF ORGANIC FOOD

The debate about the advantages of organic foods is over. According to a new \$25-million study into organic food – the largest of its kind to date – organic food is more nutritious than ordinary produce and it may help to lengthen people's lives and prevent disease.

The European Union funded study found that organic fruit and vegetables have up to 50% more antioxidants, which scientists believe can cut the risk of cancer and heart disease. They have also more vitamins and minerals such as iron and zinc.

According to other recent studies, organic foods are better for fighting cancer. And people eating organic food have improved immune system, better sleeping habits and are less likely to be overweight than when eating "conventional" foods.

Since the 1990s, more and more people have started buying organic food. In fact, sales of organic food have increased dramatically. About 80% of families in the UK now buy organic food.

"People buy organic food for health reasons," says Peter Owen, an organic farmer from South Wales. "People want natural fruit and vegetables even if they cost a little more."

A lot of people now buy food from farmers' markets in Britain. Sales at farmers' markets doubled last year. At farmers' markets, people can buy really fresh, natural food directly from the farmers. Supermarkets now sell a lot of organic products too.

Organic food is more natural and healthier than non-organic food. Some people also believe that it tastes better. Organic farmers do not use artificial pesticides or fertilizers. They do not grow genetically modified plants.

Non-organic farmers use pesticides and artificial fertilizers. The fertilizers make the fruit and vegetables bigger, but they also contain more water.

Small amounts of pesticides remain on non-organic fruit and vegetables. When people eat non-organic fruit and vegetables, they may also eat small amounts of pesticides. This may be dangerous for their health.

Organic farmers only give their animals natural food. The animals are kept in natural conditions. On non-organic farms, the animals live close together. They do not have much space to move. The animals easily become ill. The farmers have to give the animals drugs. Sometimes, the animals do not eat natural food.

Food companies that process non-organic chicken add water to make the meat heavier. They also add other substances in order to stop the water coming out again. These substances are sometimes taken from other animals, like cows or pigs.

Organic food is certainly more natural. However, there are other advantages with organic food too. Organic farmers use methods of farming that do not harm the environment. This helps wild animals and plants live more naturally. There is more biodiversity.

Organic food costs a little more than non-organic food, but more and more people want to buy it. That is good for their health. It is also good for the environment.

People don't mind paying a bit more money for organic food. Sales at farmers' markets increased by 100 % last year. Organic farmers do not use any pesticides at all.

Chicken sold by food processing companies may contain substances from other animals. Non-organic food may harm the environment more than organically produced food.

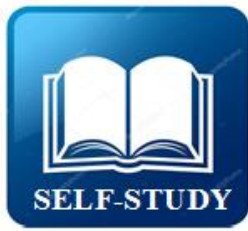
The New York Times
<https://www.nytimes.com>



POST-READING TASK

Are the following statements true or false?

1. People don't mind paying a bit more money for organic food.
2. Sales at farmers' markets increased by 100% last year.
3. Organic farmers do not use any pesticides at all.
4. Chicken sold by food processing companies may contain substances from other animals.
5. Non-organic food may harm the environment more than organically produced food.



READING FOCUS 2

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

MOLECULAR GASTRONOMY: WHERE SCIENCE MEETS CUISINE

If you have ever tried to make a perfect cake, you will know that it is not easy. There are many factors that are critical. You must mix the ingredients in the correct way. The oven must be at the right temperature. You must not take the cake out of the oven too soon. Making a cake is like doing a science experiment.

In the past, most people did not make a strong connection between science and cooking food. Chefs were like artists, not scientists. However, this situation is different today. A lot of chefs are very interested in the science of cooking. This kind of cooking even has a special name: molecular gastronomy. In recent years, molecular gastronomy has become very fashionable.

Chefs who are interested in molecular gastronomy use scientific knowledge and technology in the kitchen. For example, it is interesting to find the best way of cooking certain foods. To find out the answer, it is necessary to do experiments in the same way that scientists do. For this reason, chefs use a lot of special scientific equipment. Sometimes the results seem very ordinary. For example, one discovery was the correct temperature to cook an egg to have a cooked white part and a soft yolk. If you are interested, the answer is 65°C.

The name “molecular gastronomy” was invented by a Hungarian scientist called Nicholas Kurti. Kurti and a French scientist called Hervé. There are organized gastronomy workshops every two years in Sicily. These workshops helped people understand the importance of science in cooking.

This scientific method of cooking starts with the idea that only a small number of things taste bad. It is therefore very open to new ways of cooking and to the use of unusual ingredients. It is also open to all kinds of new technology, including the genetic modification of food plants. Chef and writer Harold McGee became interested in a particular kind of GM tomato. The modified tomato had a gene from a basil plant in it. The basil gene made the tomato less red. But it made

more aroma molecules inside it. McGee wrote in a newspaper article: “Most of the people who tasted the GM tomato preferred it to natural tomatoes. Perhaps in the future, we will have new combinations of flavour inside other plants.”

Sometimes chefs combine some very unusual ingredients. Heston Blumenthal is very interested in molecular gastronomy. At his restaurant “The Fat Duck”, he serves desserts like crab ice-cream, bacon and egg ice-cream and mango and Douglas Fir puree.

Blumenthal wants to make eating exciting and fun. When we eat, he says, we use all our senses. Surprisingly perhaps, even sound is important. For example, Blumenthal says that food can appear crunchier if you hear the sound of the crunch when you are eating. “It is great fun to play sounds to people as they eat. Of course, we can’t make a banana appear crunchy, but we can make apples appear crunchier. In this way they also appear fresher.”

A lot of people seem to like the idea of molecular gastronomy. Blumenthal’s restaurant has become very successful. It has 3 Michelin stars and it has won a lot of other awards too. However, the food is not cheap. A typical meal at Blumenthal’s Fat Duck restaurant costs about £200 per person.

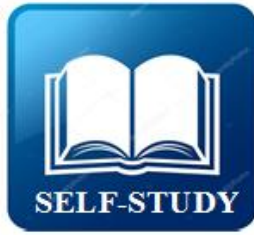
<https://www.bbc.co.uk>



POST-READING TASK

Are the following statements true or false?

1. Molecular gastronomy is the application of science and technology to cooking.
2. Nicholas Kurti was a Hungarian chef.
3. The GM tomato was not as red as natural tomatoes.
4. The majority of people who tried the GM tomato preferred the natural one.
5. Heston Blumenthal has found a way of making old apples taste fresher.



READING FOCUS 3

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

FOOD FOR THOUGHT: WHAT WILL YOU BE EATING IN 2050?

Three decades from now, will we still sit down to a table with family and friends, enjoying all the same sights and smells as we do now, or should we expect something completely different? Will overpopulation and resource depletion force us to make drastic changes in our diet? By 2050, you can expect to be tucking into foods unlike anything you've experienced before.

3D-printed food

Some scientists are trying to revolutionise the dining experience by using 3D-printed food. They hope that having a 3D printer in the kitchen will become as commonplace as the microwave or blender. Scientists say that they are easy to use: you simply have to select a recipe and put the raw food 'inks' into the printer. You can also modify the instructions to make the food exactly how you want it. This means that it would be very quick and easy to create tasty and nutritious meals.

High protein insects

How would you feel about consuming burgers, flour, and snack bars made out of insects? According to the report from the UN Food and Agriculture Organization, at least 2 billion people in Thailand, China, Brazil, Mexico, and some African countries are already consuming insects. Although some people might be disgusted by the thought of eating insects, they are high in fat, protein, vitamin, fiber, and mineral content. Besides, consuming insects is more environmentally friendly than consuming livestock, and some of them taste surprisingly like products we are used to: apple, bacon, peanut butter, or fish.

Lab-grown meat

So, what's in stock for meat lovers? In the hope to curb global warming, while still providing meat for people who love their meat products, scientists have come up with the idea of producing synthetic meat grown in the lab. Lab-grown meat apparently looks, cooks, smells, and tastes like ground beef, but the price for making 450 g of such meat reaches \$2,400.

Fake fish and seafood

Not only meat can be grown in a lab – fish can be produced there as well. The company “New Wave Foods” has already created a fake shrimp made from an algae-based substitute and is working on creating lobsters and crabs.

DNA-based diet

If DNA sequencing becomes cheaper and possible to do at home, we could use an app to know which food to eat to be more productive, sleep better, feel healthier, and know which food to avoid at all costs. Since everyone is genetically different, there is no single diet appropriate for all of us. There are already companies out there specializing in creating such a diet.

Edible water bottles

A London-based seaweed-tech startup has a plan to substitute plastic bottles with edible water bottles made with seaweed. Once on the market, this package can be used for other liquids such as spirits and cosmetics. Seaweed as a packaging material is actually cheaper than plastic.

Chewable coffee

One product, which is already available on the market, is a chewable coffee substitute. The creators claim that it helps to improve focus and support optimal cognitive performance. Who wouldn't want to have coffee you can put in your pocket?!

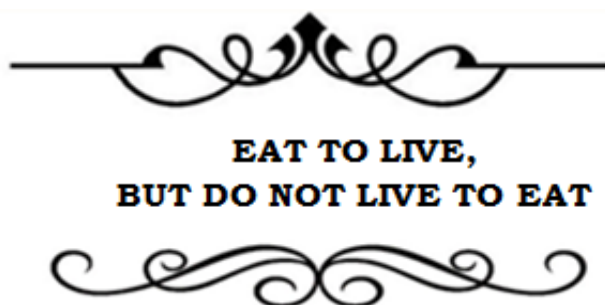
<https://www.sciencenewsforstudents.org>



POST-READING TASK

Answer the following questions.

1. Which products on this list can you see yourself eating in the future?
2. What will we be eating in the future?
3. How will our dining experience change?





SPEAKING TASK

1. Tell the class what you knew, what you have just learnt and what surprised you in these texts.
2. Work in the teams of three students. Make up a list of advantages and disadvantages of organic food. Then swap your ideas in class.
3. What is your attitude to molecular gastronomy. Swap your ideas in small groups and then in class.
4. Work in small groups. Share your ideas about our food in the next 30 years and report to the class.

HAVE A SWEET TOOTH

Meaning

TO LIKE TO EAT SWEET FOOD

THE GIRL **HAS A SWEET TOOTH**.
SHE LOVES CHOCOLATE.

YOU ARE WHAT YOU EAT

Meaning

**TO BE HEALTHY, YOU NEED
TO EAT GOOD FOOD**

WHY DO YOU EAT SO MUCH BAD STUFF
LIKE PIZZA, HAMBURGERS AND FRIES?
YOU ARE WHAT YOU EAT, YOU KNOW.

ICING ON THE CAKE

Meaning

**SOMETHING THAT MAKES A GOOD
SITUATION EVEN BETTER**

HE WAS DELIGHTED TO HAVE HIS
STORY PUBLISHED — GETTING PAID
FOR IT WAS JUST **ICING ON THE CAKE**

HAVE BIGGER FISH TO FRY

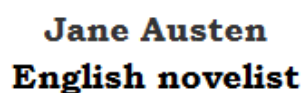
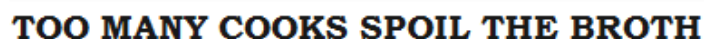
Meaning

**TO HAVE SOMETHING MORE
IMPORTANT OR MORE
INTERESTING TO DO**

I CAN'T STAY HERE MUCH LONGER.
I HAVE BIGGER FISH TO FRY.



1. In pairs/groups, create an experimental menu for a three-course dinner – starter, main course and dessert – that will be judged by a panel of expert food experts (the other members of your class).

[illegible]



READING FOR PLEASURE

AFTERNOON TEA – A GREAT BRITISH TRADITION

“There are few hours in life more agreeable than the hour dedicated to the ceremony known as afternoon tea.” *Henry James*

Afternoon tea, that most quintessential of English customs is, perhaps surprisingly, a relatively new tradition. Whilst the custom of drinking tea dates back to the third millennium BC in China and was popularised in England during the 1660s by King Charles II and his wife the Portuguese Infanta Catherine de Braganza, it was not until the mid-19th century that the concept of ‘afternoon tea’ first appeared.

Afternoon tea was introduced in England by Anna, the seventh Duchess of Bedford, in the year 1840. The Duchess would become hungry around four o’clock in the afternoon. The evening meal in her household was served fashionably late at eight o’clock, thus leaving a long period of time between lunch and dinner. The Duchess asked that a tray of tea, bread and butter (some time earlier, the Earl of Sandwich had had the idea of putting a filling between two slices of bread) and cake be brought to her room during the late afternoon. This became a habit of hers and she began inviting friends to join her.

This pause for tea became a fashionable social event. During the 1880’s upper-class and society women would change into long gowns, gloves and hats for their afternoon tea which was usually served in the drawing room between four and five o’clock.

Traditional afternoon tea consists of a selection of dainty sandwiches (including of course thinly sliced cucumber sandwiches), scones served with clotted cream and preserves. Cakes and pastries are also served. Tea grown in India or Ceylon is poured from silver tea pots into delicate bone china cups.

Nowadays however, in the average suburban home, afternoon tea is likely to be just a biscuit or small cake and a mug of tea, usually produced using a teabag.

To experience the best of the afternoon tea tradition, indulge yourself with a trip to one of London’s finest hotels or visit a quaint tearoom in the west country. The Devonshire Cream Tea is famous worldwide and consists of scones, strawberry jam and the vital ingredient, Devon clotted cream, as well as cups of hot sweet tea served in china teacups. Many of the other counties in England’s west country also claim the best cream teas: Dorset, Cornwall and Somerset.

There are a wide selection of hotels in London offering the quintessential afternoon tea experience. Hotels offering traditional afternoon tea include Claridges, the Dorchester, the Ritz and the Savoy, as well as Harrods and Fortnum and Mason.

<https://www.historic-uk.com/CultureUK>

THE LUNCHEON

By Jeffrey Archer

She waved at me across a crowded room of the St. Regis Hotel in New York. I waved back, realizing I knew the face but unable to place it. She squeezed past waiters and guests and had reached me before I had a chance to ask anyone who she was. I racked that section of my brain that is meant to store people, but it transmitted no reply. I realized I would have to resort to the old party trick of carefully worded questions until her answers jogged my memory.

“How are you, darling?” she cried, and threw her arms around me, an opening that didn’t help, since we were at a Literary Guild cocktail party, and anyone will throw their arms around you on such occasions, even the directors of the Book-of-the-Month Club. From her accent she was clearly American, and she looked to be approaching forty but thanks to the genius of modern makeup might even have overtaken it. She wore a long white cocktail dress and her blond hair was done up in one of those buns that looks like a brioche. The overall effect made her appear somewhat like a chess queen. Not that the cottage loaf helped, because she might have had dark hair flowing to her shoulders when we last met. I do wish women would realize that when they change their hairstyle they often achieve exactly what they set out to do: look completely different to any unsuspecting male.

“I’m well, thank you,” I said to the white queen. “And you?” I inquired as my opening gambit.

“I’m just fine, darling,” she replied, taking a glass of champagne from a passing waiter.

“And how’s the family?” I asked, not sure if she even had one.

“They’re all well,” she replied. No help there. “And how is Louise?” she enquired.

“Blooming,” I said. So she knew my wife. But then, not necessarily, I thought. Most American women are experts at remembering the names of men’s wives. They have to be, when on the New York circuit they change so often it becomes a greater challenge than the Times crossword.

“Have you been to London lately?” I roared above the babble. A brave question, as she might never have been to Europe.

“Only once since we had lunch together.” She looked at me quizzically. “You don’t remember who I am, do you?” she asked as she devoured a cocktail sausage. I smiled.

“Don’t be silly, Susan,” I said. “How could I ever forget?”

She smiled.

I confess that I remembered the white queen’s name in the nick of time. Although I still had only vague recollections of the lady, I certainly would never forget the lunch.

I had just had my first book published, and the critics on both sides of the Atlantic had been complimentary, even if the checks from my publishers were less so. My agent had told me on several occasions that I shouldn’t write if I wanted to make money. This created a dilemma, because I couldn’t see how to make money if I didn’t write.

It was around this time that the lady who was now facing me and chattering on, oblivious to my silence, telephoned from New York to heap lavish praise on my novel. There is no writer who does not enjoy receiving such calls, although I confess to having been less than captivated by an eleven-year-old girl who called me collect from California to say she had found a spelling mistake on page 47 and warned that she would call again if she discovered another. However, this particular lady might have ended her transatlantic congratulations with nothing more than good-bye if she had not dropped her own name. It was one of those names that can, on the spur of the moment, always book a table at a chic restaurant or a seat at the opera, which mere mortals like myself would have found impossible to attain given a month’s notice. To be fair, it was her husband’s name that had achieved the reputation, as one of the world’s most distinguished film producers.

“When I’m next in London you must have lunch with me,” came crackling down the phone.

“No,” said I gallantly, “you must have lunch with me.”

“How perfectly charming you English always are,” she said. I have often wondered how much American women get away with when they say those few words to an Englishman. Nevertheless, the wife of an Oscar-winning producer does not phone one every day.

“I promise to call you when I’m next in London,” she said.

And indeed she did, for almost six months to the day she telephoned again, this time from the Connaught Hotel, to declare how much she was looking forward to our meeting.

“Where would you like to have lunch?” I said, realizing a second too late, when she replied with the name of one of the most exclusive restaurants in town, that I should have made sure it was I who chose the venue. I was glad she couldn’t see my forlorn face as she added airily, “Monday, one o’clock. Leave the booking to me – I’m known there.”

On the day in question I donned my one respectable suit, a new shirt I had been saving for a special occasion since Christmas, and the only tie that looked as if it hadn’t previously been used to hold up my trousers. I then strolled over

to my bank and asked for a statement of my current account. The teller handed me a long piece of paper unworthy of its amount. I studied the figure as one who has to make a major financial decision. The bottom line stated in black lettering that I was in credit to the sum of thirty-seven pounds and sixty-three pence. I wrote out a check for thirty-seven pounds. I feel that a gentleman should always leave his account in credit, and I might add it was a belief that my bank manager shared with me. I then walked up to Mayfair for my luncheon date.

As I entered the restaurant I observed too many waiters and plush seats for my liking. You can't eat either, but you can be charged for them. At a corner table for two sat a woman who, although not young, was elegant. She wore a blouse of powder blue crepe-de-chine, and her blond hair was rolled away from her face in a style that reminded me of the war years and had once again become fashionable. It was clearly my transatlantic admirer, and she greeted me in the same "I've known you all my life" fashion as she was to do at the Literary Guild cocktail party years later. Although she had a drink in front of her, I didn't order an apéritif, explaining that I never drank before lunch – and I would have liked to add, "but as soon as your husband makes a film of my novel, I will."

She launched immediately into the latest Hollywood gossip, not so much dropping names as reciting them, while I ate my way through the potato chips from the bowl in front of me. A few minutes later a waiter materialized by the table and presented us with two large embossed leather menus, considerably better bound than my novel. The place positively reeked of unnecessary expense. I opened the menu and studied the first chapter with horror; it was eminently put downable. I had no idea that simple food obtained from Covent Garden that morning could cost quite so much by merely being transported to Mayfair. I could have bought her the same dishes for a quarter of the price at my favorite bistro, a mere one hundred yards away, and to add to my discomfort I observed that it was one of those restaurants where the guest's menu made no mention of the prices. I settled down to study the long list of French dishes, which only served to remind me that I hadn't eaten well for more than a month, a state of affairs that was about to be prolonged by a further day. I remembered my bank balance and morosely reflected that I would probably have to wait until my agent sold the Icelandic rights of my novel before I could afford a square meal again.

"What would you like?" I said gallantly.

"I always enjoy a light lunch," she volunteered. I sighed with premature relief, only to find that "light" did not necessarily mean inexpensive.

She smiled sweetly up at the waiter, who looked as if he wouldn't be wondering where his next meal might be coming from, and ordered just a sliver of smoked salmon, followed by two tiny tender lamb cutlets. Then she hesitated, but only for a moment, before adding "and a side salad."

I studied the menu with some caution, running my finger down the prices, not the dishes.

"I also eat lightly at lunch," I said mendaciously. "The chef's salad will be quite enough for me." The waiter was obviously affronted but left peaceably.

She chatted of Coppola and Preminger, of Pacino and Redford, and of Garbo as if she saw her all the time. She was kind enough to stop for a moment and ask what I was working on at present. I would have liked to have replied, "On how I'm going to explain to my wife that I only have sixty-three pence left in the bank," but I actually discussed my ideas for another novel. She seemed impressed but still made no reference to her husband. Should I mention him? No. Mustn't sound pushy, or as though I needed the money.

The food arrived, or that is to say her smoked salmon did, and I sat silently watching her eat my bank account while I nibbled a roll. I looked up only to discover a wine waiter hovering by my side.

"Would you care for some wine?" said I, recklessly.

"No, I don't think so," she said. I smiled a little too soon: "Well, perhaps a little something white and dry."

The wine waiter handed over a second leather-bound book, this time with golden grapes embossed on the cover. I searched down the pages for half bottles, explaining to my guest that I never drank at lunch. I chose the cheapest. The wine waiter reappeared a moment later with a large silver bucket full of ice in which the half bottle looked drowned, and, like me, completely out of its depth. A junior waiter cleared away the empty plate while another wheeled a large trolley to the side of our table and served the lamb cutlets and the chef's salad. At the same time a third waiter made up an exquisite side salad for my guest that ended up bigger than my complete order. I didn't feel I could ask her to swap.

To be fair, the chef's salad was superb – although I confess it was hard to appreciate such food fully while trying to work out a plot that would be convincing if I found the bill came to over thirty-seven pounds.

"How silly of me to ask for white wine with lamb," she said, having nearly finished the half bottle. I ordered a half bottle of the house red without calling for the wine list.

She finished the white wine and then launched into the theater, music, and other authors. All those who were still alive she seemed to know, and those who were dead she hadn't read. I might have enjoyed the performance if it hadn't been for the fear of wondering if I would be able to afford it when the curtain came down. When the waiter cleared away the empty dishes he asked my guest if she would care for anything else.

"No, thank you," she said – I nearly applauded. "Unless you have one of your famous apple surprises."

"I fear the last one may have gone, madam, but I'll go and see."

"Don't hurry," I wanted to say, but instead I just smiled as the rope tightened around my neck. A few moments later the waiter strode back in triumph, weaving between the tables holding the apple surprise in the palm of his hand, high above his head. I prayed to Newton that the apple would obey his law. It didn't.

"The last one, madam."

"Oh, what luck," she declared.

"Oh, what luck," I repeated, unable to face the menu and discover the price.

I was now attempting some mental arithmetic as I realized it was going to be a close-run thing.

"Anything else, madam?" the ingratiating waiter inquired.

I took a deep breath.

"Just coffee," she said.

"And for you, sir?"

"No, no, not for me." He left us. I couldn't think of an explanation for why I didn't drink coffee.

She then produced from the large Gucci bag by her side a copy of my novel, which I signed with a flourish, hoping the headwaiter would see, and feel I was the sort of man who should be allowed to sign the bill as well, but he resolutely remained at the far end of the room while I wrote the words "An unforgettable meeting" and appended my signature.

While the dear lady was drinking her coffee I picked at another roll and called for the bill, not because I was in any particular hurry, but like a guilty defendant at the Old Bailey, I preferred to wait no longer for the judge's sentence. A man in a smart green uniform whom I had never seen before appeared carrying a silver tray with a folded piece of paper on it, looking not unlike my bank statement. I pushed back the edge of the bill slowly and read the figure: thirty-six pounds and forty pence. I casually put my hand into my inside pocket and withdrew my life's possessions, then placed the crisp new notes on the silver tray. They were whisked away. The man in the green uniform returned a few moments later with my sixty pence change, which I pocketed, since it was the only way I was going to get a bus home. The waiter gave me a look that would have undoubtedly won him a character part in any film produced by the lady's distinguished husband.

My guest rose and walked across the restaurant, waving at, and occasionally kissing, people I had previously seen only in glossy magazines. When she reached the door she stopped to retrieve her coat, a mink. I helped her on with the fur, again failing to leave a tip. As we stood on the Curzon Street sidewalk, a dark blue Rolls-Royce drew up beside us and a liveried chauffeur leaped out and opened the rear door. She climbed in.

"Good-bye, darling," she said as the electric window slid down. "Thank you for such a lovely lunch."

"Good-bye," I said and, summoning up my courage, added: "I do hope when you are next in town I shall have the opportunity of meeting your distinguished husband."

"Oh, darling, didn't you know?" she said.

"Know what?"

"We were divorced ages ago."

"Divorced?" said I.

“Oh, yes,” she said gaily, “I haven’t spoken to him for years.”

I just stood there looking helpless.

“Oh, don’t worry yourself on my account,” she said. “He’s no loss. In any case, I recently married again” – another film producer I prayed – “in fact, I quite expected to bump into my husband today – you see, he owns the restaurant.”

Without another word the electric window purred up and the Rolls-Royce glided effortlessly out of sight, leaving me to walk to the nearest bus stop.

As I stood surrounded by Literary Guild guests, staring at the white queen with the brioche bun, I could still see her drifting away in that blue Rolls-Royce. I tried to concentrate on her words.

“I knew you wouldn’t forget me, darling,” she was saying. “After all, I did take you to lunch, didn’t I?”

The Collected Short Stories by J. Archer

THE STORY OF THE MOST FAMOUS CHEF IN BRITAIN

By Jeffrey Archer

Arthur Hapgood was demobilized on November 3, 1946. Within a month he was back at his old workplace on the shop floor of the Triumph factory on the outskirts of Coventry.

The five years spent in the Sherwood Foresters, four of them as a quartermaster seconded to a tank regiment, only underlined Arthur’s likely postwar fate, despite his having hoped to find more rewarding work once the war was over. However, on returning to England he quickly discovered that in a “land fit for heroes” jobs were not that easy to come by, and although he did not want to go back to the work he had done for five years before war had been declared, that of fitting wheels on cars, he reluctantly, after four weeks on welfare, went to see his former factory manager at Triumph.

“The job’s yours if you want it, Arthur,” the factory manager assured him.

“And the future?” “The car’s no longer a toy for the eccentric rich or even just a necessity for the businessman,” the factory manager replied. “In fact,” he continued, “management is preparing for the ‘two-car family.’”

“So they’ll need even more wheels to be put on cars,” said Arthur forlornly.

“That’s the ticket.”

Arthur signed on within the hour, and it was only a matter of days before he was back into his old routine. After all, he often reminded his wife, it didn’t take a degree in engineering to screw four knobs on to a wheel a hundred times a shift.

Arthur soon accepted the fact that he would have to settle for second best. However, second best was not what he planned for his son. Mark had celebrated his fifth birthday before his father had even set eyes on him, but from the moment Arthur returned home he lavished everything he could on the boy.

Arthur was determined that Mark was not going to end up working on the shop floor of a car factory for the rest of his life. He put in hours of overtime to earn enough money to ensure that the boy could have extra tuition in math, general science, and English. He felt well rewarded when the boy passed his eleven-plus and won a place at King Henry VIII Grammar School, and that pride did not falter when Mark went on to pass five O-levels and two years later added two A-levels.

Arthur tried not to show his disappointment when, on Mark's eighteenth birthday, the boy informed him that he did not want to go to a university. "What kind of career are you hoping to take up then, lad?" Arthur enquired.

"I've filled out an application form to join you on the shop floor just as soon as I leave school."

"But why would you –"

"Why not? Most of my friends who're leaving this term have already been accepted by Triumph, and they can't wait to get started."

"You must be out of your mind."

"Come off it, Dad. The pay's good, and you've shown that there's always plenty of extra money to be picked up with overtime. And I don't mind hard work."

"Do you think I spent all those years making sure you got a first-class education just to let you end up like me, putting wheels on cars for the rest of your life?" Arthur shouted.

"That's not the whole job, and you know it, Dad."

"You go there over my dead body," said his father. "I don't care what your friends end up doing, I only care about you. You could be a solicitor, an accountant, an army officer, even a schoolmaster. Why should you want to end up at a car factory?"

"It's better paid than teaching, for a start," said Mark. "My French teacher once told me that he wasn't as well off as you."

"That's not the point, lad –"

"The point is, Dad, I can't be expected to spend the rest of my life doing a job I don't enjoy just to satisfy one of your fantasies."

"Well, I'm not going to allow you to waste the rest of your life," said Arthur, getting up from the breakfast table. "The first thing I'm going to do when I get in to work this morning is see that your application is turned down."

"That isn't fair, Dad. I have the right to –"

But his father had already left the room, and did not utter another word to the boy before leaving for the factory. For over a week father and son didn't speak to each other. It was Mark's mother who was left to come up with the compromise. Mark could apply for any job that met with his father's approval, and as long as he completed a year at that job he could, if he still wanted to, reapply to work at the factory. His father for his part would not then put any obstacle in his son's way. Arthur nodded. Mark also reluctantly agreed to the solution.

“But only if you complete the full year,” Arthur warned solemnly.

During those last days of the summer vacation Arthur came up with several suggestions for Mark to consider, but the boy showed no enthusiasm for any of them. Mark’s mother became quite anxious that her son would end up with no job at all until, while helping her slice potatoes for dinner one night, Mark confided that he thought hotel management seemed the least unattractive proposition he had considered so far.

“At least you’d have a roof over your head and be regularly fed,” his mother said.

“Bet they don’t cook as well as you, Mom,” said Mark as he placed the sliced potatoes on the top of the Lancashire hotpot. “Still, it’s only a year.”

During the next month Mark attended several interviews at hotels around the country without success. It was then that his father discovered that his old company sergeant was head porter at the Savoy: Immediately Arthur started to pull a few strings.

“If the boy’s any good,” Arthur’s old comrade-in-arms assured him over a pint, “he could end up as a head porter, even a hotel manager.” Arthur seemed well satisfied, even though Mark was still assuring his friends that he would be joining them in a year to the day.

On September 1, 1959, Arthur and Mark Hapgood traveled together by bus to Coventry station. Arthur shook hands with the boy and promised him, “Your mother and I will make sure it’s a special Christmas this year when they give you your first leave. And don’t worry – you’ll be in good hands with ‘Sarge.’ He’ll teach you a thing or two. Just remember to keep your nose clean.”

Mark said nothing and returned a thin smile as he boarded the train. “You’ll never regret it ...” were the last words Mark heard his father say as the train pulled out of the station. Mark regretted it from the moment he set foot in the hotel.

As a junior porter he started his day at six in the morning and ended at six in the evening. He was entitled to a fifteen-minute midmorning break, a forty-five-minute lunch break, and another fifteen-minute break around midafternoon. After the first month had passed he could not recall when he had been granted all three breaks on the same day, and he quickly learned that there was no one to whom he could protest. His duties consisted of carrying guests’ suitcases up to their rooms, then lugging them back down again the moment they wanted to leave. With an average of three hundred people staying in the hotel each night, the process was endless. The pay turned out to be half what his friends were getting back home, and, since he had to hand over all his tips to the head porter, however much overtime Mark put in, he never saw an extra penny. On the only occasion he dared to mention it to the head porter, he was met with the words, “Your time will come, lad.”

It did not worry Mark that his uniform didn't fit or that his room was six feet by six feet and overlooked Charing Cross Station, or even that he didn't get a share of the tips; but it did worry him that there was nothing he could do to please the head porter – however clean he kept his nose.

Sergeant Crann, who considered the Savoy nothing more than an extension of his old platoon, didn't have a lot of time for young men under his command who hadn't done their national service.

"But I wasn't eligible to do national service," insisted Mark. "No one born after 1939 was called up."

"Don't make excuses, lad."

"It's not an excuse, Sarge. It's the truth."

"And don't call me 'Sarge.' I'm 'Sergeant Crann' to you, and don't you forget it."

"Yes, Sergeant Crann."

At the end of each day Mark would return to his little box-room with its small bed, small chair, and tiny chest of drawers, and collapse exhausted. The only picture in the room – Hals's *The Laughing Cavalier* – was on the calendar that hung above Mark's bed. The date of September 1, 1960, was circled in red to remind him when he would be allowed to rejoin his friends at the factory back home. Each night before falling asleep he would cross out the offending day like a prisoner making scratch marks on a wall.

At Christmas, Mark returned home for a four-day break, and when his mother saw the general state of the boy she tried to talk his father into allowing Mark to give up the job early, but Arthur remained implacable.

"We made an agreement. I can't be expected to get him a job at the factory if he isn't responsible enough to keep to his part of a bargain."

During the break Mark waited for his friends outside the factory gate until their shift had ended and listened to their stories of weekends spent watching football, drinking at the pub, and dancing to the Everly Brothers. They all sympathized with his problem and looked forward to his joining them in September. "It's only a few more months," one of them reminded him cheerfully.

Far too quickly, Mark was on the journey back to London, where he continued unwillingly to cart cases up and down the hotel corridors for month after month.

Once the English rain had subsided, the usual influx of American tourists began. Mark liked the Americans, who treated him as an equal and often tipped him a shilling when others would have given him only sixpence. But whatever the amount Mark received, Sergeant Crann would still pocket it with the inevitable, "Your time will come, lad."

One such American for whom Mark ran around diligently every day during his two-week stay ended up presenting the boy with a ten-shilling note as he left the front entrance of the hotel.

Mark said, "Thank you, sir," and turned around to see Sergeant Crann standing in his path.

"Hand it over," said Crann as soon as the American visitor was well out of earshot.

"I was going to the moment I saw you," said Mark, passing the note to his superior.

"Not thinking of pocketing what's rightfully mine, were you?"

"No, I wasn't," said Mark. "Though God knows I earned it."

"Your time will come, lad," said Sergeant Crann without much thought.

"Not while someone as mean as you is in charge," replied Mark sharply.

"What was that you said?" asked the head porter, veering around.

"You heard me the first time, Sarge."

The clip across the ear took Mark by surprise.

"You, lad, have just lost your job. Nobody, but nobody, talks to me like that." Sergeant Crann turned and set off smartly in the direction of the manager's office.

The hotel manager, Gerald Drummond, listened to the head porter's version of events before asking Mark to report to his office immediately. "You realize I have been left with no choice but to fire you," were his first words once the door was closed.

Mark looked up at the tall, elegant man in his long, black coat, white collar, and black tie. "Am I allowed to tell you what actually happened, sir?" he asked.

Mr. Drummond nodded, then listened without interruption as Mark gave his version of what had taken place that morning, and also disclosed the agreement he had entered into with his father. "Please let me complete my final ten weeks," Mark ended, "or my father will only say I haven't kept my end of our bargain."

"I haven't got another job vacant at the moment," protested the manager. "Unless you're willing to peel potatoes for ten weeks."

"Anything," said Mark.

"Then report to the kitchen at six tomorrow morning. I'll tell the third chef to expect you. Only if you think the head porter is a martinet, just wait until you meet Jacques, our maître chef de cuisine. He won't clip your ear, he'll cut it off."

Mark didn't care. He felt confident that for just ten weeks he could face anything, and at five-thirty the following morning he exchanged his dark blue uniform for a white top and blue and white check trousers before reporting for his new duties. To his surprise the kitchen took up almost the entire basement of the hotel, and was even more of a bustle than the lobby had been.

The third chef put him in the corner of the kitchen, next to a mountain of potatoes, a bowl of cold water, and a sharp knife. Mark peeled through breakfast, lunch, and dinner and fell asleep on his bed that night without even enough energy left to cross a day off his calendar.

For the first week he never actually saw the fabled Jacques. With seventy people working in the kitchens Mark felt confident he could pass his whole period there without anyone being aware of him.

Each morning at six he would start peeling, then hand over the potatoes to a gangling youth called Terry, who in turn would dice or cut them according to the third chef's instructions for the dish of the day. Monday sauté, Tuesday mashed, Wednesday French-fried, Thursday sliced, Friday roast, Saturday croquette ... Mark quickly worked out a routine that kept him well ahead of Terry and therefore out of any trouble.

Having watched Terry do his job for over a week Mark felt sure he could have shown the young apprentice how to lighten his workload quite simply, but he decided to keep his mouth closed: opening it might only get him into more trouble, and he was certain the manager wouldn't give him a second chance.

Mark soon discovered that Terry always felt badly behind on Tuesday's shepherd's pie and Thursday's Lancashire hotpot. From time to time the third chef would come across to complain, and he would glance over at Mark to be sure that it wasn't him who was holding the process up. Mark made certain that he always had a spare tub of peeled potatoes by his side so that he escaped censure.

It was on the first Thursday morning in August (Lancashire hotpot) that Terry sliced off the top of his forefinger. Blood spurted all over the sliced potatoes and onto the wooden table as the lad began yelling hysterically.

"Get him out of here!" Mark heard the maître chef de cuisine bellow above the noise of the kitchen as he stormed toward them.

"And you," he said, pointing at Mark, "clean up mess and start slicing rest of potatoes. I have eight hundred hungry customers still expecting to feed."

"Me?" said Mark in disbelief. "But –"

"Yes, you. You couldn't do worse job than idiot who calls himself trainee chef and cuts off finger." The chef marched away, leaving Mark to move reluctantly across to the table where Terry had been working. He felt disinclined to argue while the calendar was there to remind him that he was down to his last twenty-five days.

Mark set about a task he had carried out for his mother many times. The clean, neat cuts were delivered with a skill Terry would never learn to master. By the end of the day, although exhausted, Mark did not feel quite as tired as he had in the past.

At eleven that night the maître chef de cuisine¹ threw off his hat and barged out of the swinging doors, a sign to everyone else they could also leave the kitchen once everything that was their responsibility had been cleared up. A few seconds later the doors swung back open and the chef burst in. He stared around the kitchen as everyone waited to see what he would do next. Having found what he was looking for, he headed straight for Mark.

¹the main chef in a restaurant

“Oh, my God,” thought Mark. “He’s going to kill me.”

“How is your name?” the chef demanded.

“Mark Hapgood, sir,” he managed to splutter out.

“You waste on potatoes, Mark Hapgood,” said the chef. “You start on vegetables in morning. Report at seven.”

The chef turned on his heel even before Mark had the chance to reply. He dreaded the thought of having to spend three weeks in the middle of the kitchens, never once out of the maître chef de cuisine’s sight, but he accepted that there was no alternative.

The next morning Mark arrived at six for fear of being late, and spent an hour watching the fresh vegetables being unloaded from Covent Garden market. The hotel’s supply manager checked every case carefully, rejecting several before he signed a receipt to show that the hotel had received over three thousand pounds’ worth of vegetables. An average day, he assured Mark.

The maître chef de cuisine appeared a few minutes before seven-thirty, checked the menus, and told Mark to score the Brussels sprouts, trim the French beans, and remove the coarse outer leaves of the cabbages.

“But I don’t know how,” Mark replied honestly. He could feel the other trainees in the kitchen edging away from him.

“Then I teach you,” roared the chef. “Perhaps only thing you learn is if hope to be good chef, you able to do everyone’s job in kitchen, even potato peeler’s.”

“But I’m hoping to be a ...” Mark began and then thought better of it. The chef seemed not to have heard Mark as he took his place beside the new recruit. Everyone in the kitchen stared as the chef began to show Mark the basic skills of cutting, dicing, and slicing.

“And remember other idiot’s finger,” the chef said on completing the lesson and passing the razor-sharp knife back to Mark. “Yours can be next.”

Mark started gingerly dicing the carrots, then the Brussels sprouts, removing the outer layer before cutting a firm cross in the base. Next he moved on to trimming and slicing the beans. Once again he found it fairly easy to keep ahead of the chef’s requirements.

At the end of each day, after the head chef had left, Mark stayed on to sharpen all his knives in preparation for the following morning, and would not leave his work area until it was spotless. On the sixth day, after a curt nod from the chef, Mark realized he must be doing something half right. By the following Saturday he felt he had mastered the simple skills of vegetable preparation and found himself becoming fascinated by what the chef himself was up to. Although Jacques rarely addressed anyone as he marched around the acre of kitchen except to grunt his approval or disapproval – the latter more commonly – Mark quickly learned to anticipate his needs. Within a short space of time he began to feel that he was part of a team – even though he was only too aware of being the novice recruit.

On the deputy chef's day off the following week Mark was allowed to arrange the cooked vegetables in their bowls, and spent some time making each dish look attractive as well as edible. The chef not only noticed but actually muttered his greatest accolade – "Bon."

During his last three weeks at the Savoy, Mark did not even look at the calendar above his bed.

One Thursday morning a message came down from the under-manager that Mark was to report to his office as soon as was convenient. Mark had quite forgotten that it was August 31 – his last day. He cut ten lemons into quarters, then finished preparing the forty plates of thinly sliced smoked salmon that would complete the first course for a wedding lunch. He looked with pride at his efforts before folding up his apron and leaving to collect his papers and final pay envelope.

"Where you think you're going?" asked the chef, looking up.

"I'm off," said Mark. "Back to Coventry."

"See you Monday then. You deserve day off."

"No, I'm going home for good," said Mark.

The chef stopped checking the cuts of rare beef that would make up the second course of the wedding feast.

"Going?" he repeated as if he didn't understand the word.

"Yes. I've finished my year and now I'm off home to work."

"I hope you found first-class hotel," said the chef with genuine interest.

"I'm not going to work in a hotel."

"A restaurant, perhaps?"

"No, I'm going to get a job at Triumph."

The chef looked puzzled for a moment, unsure if it was his English or whether the boy was mocking him.

"What is – Triumph?"

"A place where they manufacture cars."

"You will manufacture cars?"

"Not a whole car, but I will put the wheels on."

"You put cars on wheels?" the chef said in disbelief.

"No," laughed Mark. "Wheels on cars."

The chef still looked uncertain.

"So you will be cooking for the car workers?"

"No. As I explained, I'm going to put the wheels on the cars," said Mark slowly, enunciating each word.

"That not possible."

"Oh, yes it is," responded Mark. "And I've waited a whole year to prove it."

"If I offered you job as commis chef¹, you change mind?" asked the chef quietly.

¹a junior cook in a restaurant kitchen

“Why would you do that?”

“Because you have talent in those fingers. In time I think you become chef, perhaps even good chef.”

“No, thanks. I’m off to Coventry to join my mates.”

The head chef shrugged. “Tant pis,” he said, and without a second glance returned to the carcass of beef. He glanced over at the plates of smoked salmon. “A wasted talent,” he added after the swing door had closed behind his potential protégé.

Mark locked his room, threw the calendar in the wastepaper basket, and returned to the hotel to hand in his kitchen clothes to the housekeeper. The final action he took was to return his room key to the under-manager.

“Your pay envelope, your cards, and your withholding tax forms. Oh, and the chef has phoned to say he would be happy to give you a reference,” said the under-manager. “Can’t pretend that happens every day.”

“Won’t need that where I’m going,” said Mark. “But thanks all the same.”

He started off for the station at a brisk pace, his small battered suitcase swinging by his side, only to find that each step took a little longer. When he arrived at Euston he made his way to Platform Seven and began walking up and down, occasionally staring at the great clock above the reservations hall. He watched first one train and then another pull out of the station bound for Coventry. He was aware of the station becoming dark as shadows filtered through the glass awning onto the public concourse. Suddenly he turned and walked off at an even brisker pace. If he hurried he could still be back in time to help the chef prepare dinner that night.

Mark trained under Jacques le Renneu for five years. Vegetables were followed by sauces, fish by poultry, meats by patisserie. After eight years at the Savoy he was appointed second chef, and had learned so much from his mentor that regular patrons could no longer be sure when it was the maître chef de cuisine’s day off. Two years later Mark became a master chef, and when in 1971 Jacques was offered the opportunity to return to Paris and take over the kitchens of the George V – an establishment that is to Paris what the Savoy is to London – Jacques agreed, but only on condition that Mark accompanied him.

“It is wrong direction from Coventry,” Jacques warned him, “and in any case they sure to offer you my job at the Savoy.”

“I’d better come along, otherwise those Frogs will never get a decent meal.” “Those Frogs,” said Jacques, “will always know when it’s my day off.”

“Yes, and book in even greater numbers,” suggested Mark, laughing.

It was not to be long before Parisians were flocking to the George V, not to rest their weary heads but to relish the cooking of the two-chef team.

When Jacques celebrated his sixty-fifth birthday, the great hotel did not have to look far to appoint his successor.

“The first Englishman ever to be maître chef de cuisine at the George V,” said Jacques, raising a glass of champagne at his farewell banquet. “Who would believe it? Of course, you will have to change your name to Marc to hold down such a position.”

“Neither will ever happen,” said Mark.

“Oh, yes it will, because I have recommended you.”

“Then I shall turn it down.”

“Going to put cars on wheels, peut-être?” asked Jacques mockingly.

“No, but I have found a little restaurant on the Left Bank. With my savings alone I can’t quite afford the lease, but with your help ...”

Chez Jacques opened on the rue du Plaisir on the Left Bank on May 1, 1982, and it was not long before those customers who had taken the George V for granted transferred their allegiance.

Mark’s reputation spread as the two chefs pioneered “nouvelle cuisine,” and soon the only way anyone could be guaranteed a table at the restaurant in under three weeks was to be a film star or a cabinet minister.

The day Michelin gave Chez Jacques its third star, Mark, with Jacques’s blessing, decided to open a second restaurant. The press and customers then quarreled among themselves as to which was the finer establishment. The reservation sheets showed clearly that the public felt there was no difference.

When, in October 1986, Jacques died at the age of seventy-one, the restaurant critics wrote confidently that standards were bound to fall. A year later the same journalists had to admit that one of the five great chefs of France had come from a town in the British Midlands they could not even pronounce.

Jacques’s death only made Mark yearn more for his homeland, and when he read in The Daily Telegraph of a new development to be built in Covent Garden, he called the site agent to ask for more details.

Mark’s third restaurant was opened in the heart of London on February 11, 1987.

Over the years Mark Hapgood often traveled back to Coventry to see his parents. His father had retired long since, but Mark was still unable to persuade either parent to take the trip to Paris and sample his culinary efforts. But now that he had opened in the country’s capital, he hoped to tempt them.

“We don’t need to go up to London,” said his mother, setting the table. “You always cook for us whenever you come home, and we read of your successes in the papers. In any case, your father isn’t so good on his legs nowadays.”

“What do you call this, son?” his father asked a few minutes later as noisette¹ of lamb surrounded by baby carrots was placed in front of him.

“Nouvelle cuisine.”

“And people pay good money for it?”

¹a small round boneless slice of lamb from the fillet

Mark laughed, and the following day prepared his father's favorite Lancashire hotpot¹.

"Now that's a real meal," said Arthur after his third helping. "And I'll tell you something for nothing, lad. You cook it almost as well as your mother."

A year later Michelin announced the restaurants throughout the world that had been awarded a coveted third star. The Times let its readers know on its front page that Chez Jacques was the first English restaurant ever to be so honored.

To celebrate the award, Mark's parents finally agreed to make the journey down to London, though not until Mark had sent a telegram saying he was reconsidering that job at Triumph. He sent a car to fetch his parents and had them installed in a suite at the Savoy. That evening he reserved the best table at Chez Jacques in their name.

Vegetable soup followed by steak-and-kidney pie with a plate of bread-and-butter pudding to end on were not the table d'hôte that night, but they were served for the special guests at table 17.

Under the influence of the finest wine, Arthur was soon chatting happily to anyone who would listen and couldn't resist reminding the headwaiter that it was his son who owned the restaurant.

"Don't be silly, Arthur," said his wife. "He already knows that."

"Nice couple, your parents," the headwaiter confided to his boss after he had served them their coffee and supplied Arthur with a cigar. "What did your old man do before he retired? Banker? Lawyer? Schoolmaster?"

"Oh, no, nothing like that," said Mark quietly. "He spent the whole of his working life putting wheels on cars."

"But why would he waste his time doing that?" asked the waiter incredulously.

"Because he wasn't lucky enough to have a father like mine," Mark replied.

The Collected Short Stories by J. Archer

FOOD IDIOMS

I

My mother always told us **there is no use crying over spilled milk**. That means you should not get angry when something bad happens and cannot be changed. People said my mother was **a good egg**. She would always help anyone in need. We never had to **walk on eggshells** around her. We did not have to be careful about what we said or did because she never got angry at us. She also told us **you have to break some eggs to make an omelet**. This means you have to do what is necessary to move forward.

My mother believed **you are what you eat**. A good diet is important for good health. She would always give us nutritious food. She liked serving us meat and potatoes for dinner. **Meat and potatoes** can also mean the most important part of something. It describes someone who likes simple things. Here is another

¹ a stew of meat, onions, and potatoes, typically covered with a layer of sliced potato

expression about meat: **one man's meat is another man's poison**. In other words, one person might like something very much while another person might hate the same thing.

My father was also a good and honest person. People said he was **the salt of the earth**. He would never **pour salt on a wound**, or make someone feel worse about something that was already a painful experience. However, sometimes he told us a story that seemed bigger than life. So we had to **take it with a grain of salt**. That is, we could not believe everything he told us.

My husband has a good job. He makes enough money to support our family. So we say he **brings home the bacon**. He can **cut the mustard**, or do what is expected of him at work. It is easy to find my husband in a crowd. He stands almost two meters tall. He is a **tall drink of water**.

I take the train to work. It is not a pleasant ride because the train can be full of people. It is so crowded that we are **packed like sardines** – just like small fish in a can.

My supervisor at work is sometimes **out to lunch**. She is out of touch and does not always know what is going on in our office. Yet she is right about one thing: **there is no such thing as a free lunch**. Something may appear to be free of charge, but there may be a hidden cost.

When we fail to see problems at work, my supervisor tells us to **wake up and smell the coffee**. We need to pay more attention and fix the problem. I once made a big mistake at the office and felt foolish. I had **egg on my face**.

Over the weekend, my friend invited me to watch a football game on television. But I do not like football. It is **not my cup of tea**.

We hope this story has given you **food for thought**, that is, something to think about.

II

If something is new and improved, we say it is **the best thing since sliced bread**. In the past, bread was only sold in loaves in baked goods stores. Today, American supermarkets sell sliced bread in plastic bags. Many people thought this was easier because you did not have to cut the bread yourself. The person who makes the most money in a family is called the **breadwinner**.

Bread and butter issues are those that are most important to Americans and affect them directly – like jobs and health care.

Half a loaf is better than none means that getting part of what you want is better than getting nothing at all. If **you know which side your bread is buttered on**, then you know what your best interests are and will act to protect them.

Many Americans like their bread toasted. Toast is cooked with dry heat until it starts to turn brown. But you are in big trouble if someone tells you **you're toast**.

If you say something is **a piece of cake**, it means something is really easy, like a test you take in school. Cakes are often covered with a sweet topping, called icing. **Icing on the cake** means something good that happens in addition to another

good thing. Another expression says **you can't have your cake and eat it, too**. This means you cannot have everything your way, especially if two wishes oppose each other.

Hotcakes are also called pancakes. They contain flour, eggs, milk and baking powder. You cook them in a frying pan and eat them with fruit or a sweet topping. If a new product is popular and selling well, you might say it is **selling like hotcakes**.

But if a friend of yours did something bad, you might stop being friends with him immediately or **drop him like a hotcake**.

Flat as a pancake describes something that is, well, really flat.

A tough cookie is not something you want to eat. It is a person who is difficult to deal with, and would do anything necessary to get what he or she wants. This person could be **a sharp cookie** or someone who is not easily fooled. Very often things do not go the way we planned. Instead of getting angry or sad, you might just accept it and say **that's the way the cookie crumbles**.

Many pies are also good to eat. If something is easy to do, you could say it is **easy as pie**. But if you do something wrong or bad, you might have to apologize and show you are sorry. In other words, you might have to **eat humble pie**.

If you have an idea or plan that is not really possible, someone might say it is **pie in the sky**. If something is really easy to do, you might say it is like **taking candy from a baby**. But that would not be a very nice thing to do!

III

Potatoes are a popular food in many areas. But something is considered **small potatoes** if it is not important. You probably would not want to hold a **hot potato** in your bare hands. This also means a problem or issue that no one wants to deal with. Someone might call you a **couch potato** if you sit and watch television all day and get little or no physical exercise.

There are several expressions about beans. If someone is very energetic, you might say she is **full of beans**. If you say something **does not amount to a hill of beans**, you mean it is of little importance. I might say **you don't know beans** about a subject if you do not know anything at all about it. But if you **spill the beans**, you tell something that was supposed to be a secret.

Farmers have to separate the valuable parts of their crops from the waste. So **separating the wheat from the chaff** means keeping what is valuable and rejecting what is worthless.

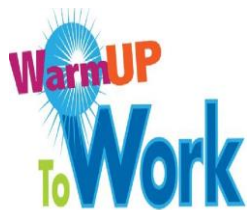
Students often have to take a difficult test to gain entrance to a special school. So you could say the ones who are chosen are the best ones, or **the cream of the crop**.

There is an old saying that **forbidden fruit tastes the sweetest**. That means some people get pleasure from doing something that they are not supposed to do.

[http:// www.idiomland.com](http://www.idiomland.com)

Section II. SHOPPING AND MONEY

Unit 1. MONEY MATTERS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

What is most important to you in life? Put the following in order of importance from 1 to 6:

- having interests and hobbies;
- spending time with your family;
- having fun with your friends;
- finding and being with your true love;
- making money;
- following religion.

Which of these opinions do you agree with?

- Rich people are usually happier than poor people.
- In Belarus people were generally happier in the past than they are now.
- People in Belarus today have more money to spend than previous generations.
- A salary increase has little effect on lasting happiness.
- A pay cut can have a lasting impact on your happiness.
- Making less money than your friends can affect your overall happiness.

BE HARD UP

Meaning

TO HAVE VERY LITTLE MONEY

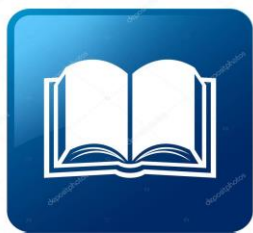
YOU KNOW I HATE TO ASK BUT
COULD I BORROW SOME MONEY
UNTIL I GET PAID? I'M REALLY
HARD UP THIS MONTH.

MONEY TALKS

Meaning

**RICH PEOPLE CAN GET WHAT
THEY WANT**

- HE CAN'T ACT SO HOW DID HE
GET THE PART IN THE MOVIE?
- HIS FATHER IS A MILLIONAIRE.
MONEY TALKS.



READING FOCUS 1

Read the text to find out what it says about the opinion above.

THE GOOD LIFE?

How much money do you need to be happy? For many, the answer to this question is simple: “More”! Despite paying lip service to the notion that money and material things are secondary to family, love and friends, people all around the world still pursue money as if it is the only thing, that can make them happy. Everyone seems to be working harder and harder for money at the expense of spending time with their families. People are spending more than ever before, and falling deeper and deeper in debt every year. We want bigger homes in better neighborhoods, the latest car, and bigger wide-screen TVs. Is it ‘the good life’, and spending a lot of money really makes us happier?

Researchers have been interested for a long time in the link between income and happiness. Some conclude that once you have enough money to meet basic needs, such as food and shelter, having more money does little to help your happiness and general satisfaction with life. As a matter of fact, a recent study of 1,000 or less a month were slightly happier than those whose monthly income was above \$4,000.

In the West and in Asia, people own more and spend more than their parents’ generation, yet some researchers claim that overall levels of happiness have remained even. While North Americans have twice as much spending power as they did in the 1990s, today they are ten times more likely to be depressed. Japan and Korea have become some of the wealthiest countries in the world, but they also have the third and fourth highest rates of suicide respectively, while countries with some of the highest rates of poverty often have the lowest rates of suicide. People are beginning to question the belief that wealth really makes our lives better. Indeed, the blind pursuit of being rich and consuming more and more products may actually do the reverse.

Why do more money and more things fail to make happier? The problem is that we quickly get used to having more money and new things. Initially, we may feel euphoric when we get that bigger house or a new car, but we soon get used to having it, and then it doesn’t seem so special any more. And when we hear that our friends or relatives now have bigger houses and newer cars, we become dissatisfied with what we have.

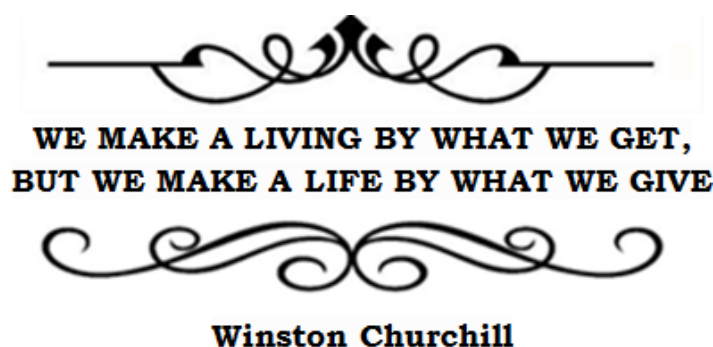
Indeed, money may be more effective in making us unhappy, rather than the other way around. As increase in salary may only produce temporary happiness, but getting a decrease in salary can adversely affect happiness in the long term. We become used to a certain level of living and when that is taken away, it is difficult for us to be satisfied with less.

Sociological researcher Glenn Firebaugh claims that it is not just a question of having or not having a lot of money. The key factor is whether or not you have a lot of money compared to those around you. People can be quite satisfied with their salaries, for example, until they find out that their peers earn more. The desire to maintain equal or higher levels of income and purchasing habit as those around us (or ‘keeping up with the Joneses’, as the common expression goes) turns life into a never ending competition. Says Firebaugh, ‘Rather than promoting overall happiness, continued income growth could promote an ongoing consumption race in which individuals consume more and more just to maintain a constant level of happiness’.

Sociologists also point out that to earn a large amount of money we often have to sacrifice the things that really make us happy. Strong relationships, such as a loving family, a strong marriage and good friends are among the most powerful predictors of happiness and satisfaction with life. Simply finding what you love to do and having time to do it is also a key factor. In most cases, the amount of money you earn has little effect on these things and quite often requires us to actually spend less time doing what really makes us happy. High-paying jobs tend to be very demanding, and can leave people with little energy for loved ones and hobbies.

So what place should money have in your life? This is entirely up to you, but consider that you would like to say when you look back on your life in your retirement. ‘My marriage broke down my children are strangers to me, and I usually felt miserable and stressed due to my high-powered job, but I drove the best car in the neighborhood’ is that really what life is all about?

<https://www.forbes.com>





POST-READING TASKS

1. Answer the questions

1. What does the expression **paying lip service to** mean?
 - a) People often say that money is more important than family, friends, and love.
 - b) People say money is not that important, but pay for a lot of service that they think will make them happy.
 - c) People might say family, friends, and love are the most important things in their lives, but they behave as though money is the most important thing.
2. The expression **overall levels of happiness have remained even** means...
 - a) The percentage of happy people has neither increased nor decreased.
 - b) The number of happy people is still fair and appropriate.
 - c) The number of people who are happy is not an odd number.
3. What does **blind pursuit** mean?
 - a) Trying to get something without really understanding why you want it.
 - b) Trying to get something, but you do not know how to do it.
 - c) Trying to get something you can't see.
4. What is the **ongoing consumption race**?
 - a) People continually compete with others to buy more and more products, just so they can remain satisfied.
 - b) A situation in which people buy more and more things, and thus increase their level of happiness continually.
 - c) A situation in which businesses encourage people to buy more products, thereby keeping the economy strong and people happy.
5. What does the phrase **up to you** mean?
 - a) It is out of your control.
 - b) It is unknown to you.
 - c) It is your choice.

2. Which of these statements best describe your attitude to money?

1. All I want is to have enough money to enjoy life.
2. Money is very important to me. I'd like to earn as much as possible.
3. I would be happy to live with less money and fewer possessions



READING FOCUS 2

PERSONAL FINANCE: MAKING ENDS MEET

A. Cash, cheques and cards

1. I **was broke/ skint** at the end of last month. [had no money left]
2. I'm **rolling in** it this month; I got a payment of £3,000 for some work I did.
3. It's sometimes difficult **to make ends meet** with three children and only one parent working. [to survive financially]
4. **Things are a bit tight** at the moment. [my finances are not good]
5. I was **strapped for cash** and had to borrow money from my parents. [needed cash and had very little]
6. She gave me a cheque for what she owed me but it **bounced**. [the bank refused to pay it]
7. Who shall I **make** this cheque out to / **payable to**? [What name shall I put on it?]
8. The easiest way to pay your household bills is by **direct debit** or **by electronic transfer**. [a regular automatic payment, e.g. every month] [movement of money online between two bank accounts]
9. Shall we **put/stick** this meal **on** my credit card? Then we can forget it.
10. Could you **charge it to** my credit card, please?
11. The **APR** for this credit card is 23%, which is 2% lower than my other card. [annual percentage rate of interest]
12. My card **expires** in 09/20. The **expiry date** is 09/20. [is not valid after]
13. **Credit card fraud** has increased in recent years. [illegal use of someone's card or account]
14. Is this a credit card or a **debit card**? [card where the money is taken directly from your bank account]
15. I went to **withdraw** some money / **get** some money **out** but I forgot my **PIN** and the **ATM** swallowed my card after three wrong attempts. [take money from my account; get money out = informal] [personal identification number] [automated teller machine, often just called a 'cash machine' or 'cashpoint']
16. A lot of people don't like using **contactless cards** because they think they are more vulnerable to fraud. They prefer to use their phones to make **contactless payments**.

B. Savings, pensions, etc.

1. Victims of last year's rail crash will receive **lump sum** compensation payments, following a High Court decision today.

2. A **golden handshake** of ten million pounds was paid to the boss of one of Britain's biggest companies today. This was in addition to an annual **bonus** of two million pounds.

3. People with well-managed **share portfolios** have done better on **stock market** than individuals who buy **stocks and shares** privately.

4. The thieves stole Mr and Mrs Bateson's **life savings**, which they kept under their bed in a metal box.

5. Johan Carslow left only a very small sum to his family in his **will**. It was hardly enough to **cover** the cost of his funeral.

6. Ms Rafstedt had **borrowed** heavily to finance the building of a new house and found herself deeply in debt, which let her to commit the robbery.

<https://busyteacher.org>



lump sum – single, large payment.

golden handshake – large payment to someone on leaving a job.

share portfolios – combination of investments of different kinds.

stock market – organisation which controls the buying or selling of parts of the ownership of companies.

stocks and shares – parts of the ownership of companies which people buy as investments in the hope of making a profit.



POST-READING TASKS

1. Complete these sentences using words from the opposite page.

1. This is a credit card. If you want one that takes the money directly from your bank account, then you need a
2. She never used her card on 9 April, but someone did and bought hundreds of pounds' worth of goods. It was a case of
3. I haven't got enough cash to pay for this meal; shall I just ... on my card?
4. I pay my rent by ... every month, so I don't have to do anything.
5. When I ran out of money in Thailand, my parents made an ... from their bank account to mine.
6. I'm sorry, I can't lend you anything at all. I'm absolutely

7. I couldn't pay for it last month as I was a bit ... for cash.
8. I have to be very careful how I spend my money because things are a bit ... right now.
9. You can now use your phone to make ... payments on the bus and underground system in the city.

2. Correct the mistakes in these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1. She got a huge golden hand when she left the company.
2. My old aunt Jessie is rich in it. Every time I go to see her she gives me £100.
3. My father got a bump sum when he retired, so he bought a weekend cottage.
4. She put her living savings into an online company and lost everything when it collapsed.
5. The bank tried to persuade me to put my money into a share folio, with stocks and shares in different companies.
6. If you need a very large sum of money, it's not a good idea to lend from friends or neighbours.

3. Match the beginnings and endings of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Students often find it difficult to make | a. in her will. |
| 2. She invested a lot of money on the | b. PIN, as that's when I was born. |
| 3. If you need cash, there's a | c. to cover the cost of the holiday. |
| 4. I use 1-9-8-7 as my | d. ends meet. |
| 5. She left a million euros | e. cashpoint in the supermarket. |
| 6. The money was not enough | f. stock market and lost it all. |



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. Nouns for money and payments. Match the words and definitions.

budget charge deposit fare fee fees
installment lump sum loan savings overdraft

- 1) the money that is available to a person or organization;
- 2) money that bank lends and somebody borrows;
- 3) the money you pay to travel by bus, plane, taxi, etc.;

- 4) the amount of money somebody asks for goods and services, etc.;
- 5) money that you keep in a bank and don't spend;
- 6) one of a number of payments that are paid regularly until something is has been paid for;
- 7) the amount of money you owe to a bank when you have spent more than is in your bank account;
- 8) an amount of money that is paid at one time not on separate occasions.

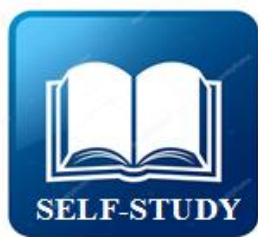
2. Money in today's society. With a partner, say what you think the bold phrases mean.

1. We live in a **consumer society**, which is dominated by spending money and buying material possessions.
2. The **standard of living** has risen a lot over the past 10 years.
3. People's **income** has gone up, but **inflation** is high, so the **cost of living** has also risen.
4. A lot of people are **in debt**, and have problems paying back their **mortgages**.
5. People have mortgages or loans have to pay high **interest rates**.
6. Our **currency** is unstable and **exchange rates** fluctuates a lot.

Which aspects of the sentences above are true in your country?

3. Idioms related to money. Match sentences 1-8 with a-h.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. They have got a ten-bedroomed house. | a. He's got more money than sense . |
| 2. Jack's broke again. | b. No way. He's really tight-fisted . |
| 3. This restaurant has good food at a reasonable price. | c. I'm in the red . |
| 4. Their income doesn't cover their basic expenses. | d. It must have cost a fortune . |
| 5. I have an overdraft at the bank. | e. It's good value for money . |
| 6. Do you think Ann will lend me the money? | f. I'm surprised. He spends money like water . |
| 7. Dan has bought two sports cars. | g. They are living beyond their means . |
| 8. They have a luxurious lifestyle which they can't really afford. | h. They can't make ends meet . |



READING FOCUS 3

WINNING A FORTUNE

Up until a year ago, Arthur and Mildred Watkins were just a very ordinary middle-aged couple. They lived in a small suburb, just outside Birmingham. With two teenage children and a large mortgage, life wasn't easy. And then disaster struck ... Arthur lost his job. Mildred remembers what happened. Arthur just couldn't find another job. He was too old, you see. Soon we had **fallen behind** with mortgage payments and they **cut** the phone **off** as we couldn't pay the bill. We had to borrow money from the bank, from friends... it was awful! It began to really **get me down**. I just didn't know what to do.

And then the incredible happened ... Arthur continues the story. We got this letter – official-looking it was. I thought it was going to be another demand from the bank, but it wasn't. It was a letter telling us we had won £2,000,000. From that day Arthur and Mildred's life changed completely. But not all for the good.

The first thing they did was to settle up all their debts. Then they bought a large Rolls-Royce and several fur coats for Mildred. They moved down south and bought a large luxury flat in the middle of the West End of London. They flew on Concorde to the States, went around the casinos in Las Vegas and stayed in all the big hotels.

Our big mistake was not planning what to do with the money. We never **put** any **by**. I suppose we just went a bit mad. As well as that, a lot of people wrote to us, telling us about all their problems and why they needed money. Therefore, we **gave away** a lot of money. We wanted to help.

Another problem arose when they were visited by a certain Mr James Harkington. Mr Harkington introduced himself as a 'professional investment consultant'... That Harkington man – he really **ripped** us **off**. He looked so respectable and told us how we had to invest our money carefully for the future. Anyway, we agreed to buy shares in some company in Manchester. After just four weeks we heard it was out of business and we had lost all our money. Harkington had disappeared.

And now the money has nearly all gone. Arthur and Mildred are trying to sell their London flat and move back to Birmingham but things aren't looking good. None of their friends want to see them now, they all say Arthur and Mildred are too good for them now. Things just can't **go on** like this but Mildred and Arthur just don't know what they are going to do.

[https:// www.englishlearn.com](https://www.englishlearn.com)



POST-READING TASK

Find a phrasal verb in the text that means: save; continue; cheat; be late; distribute; depress; disconnect; pay back.

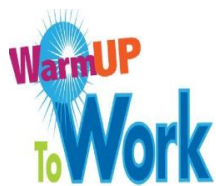


SPEAKING TASK

Talk about the luck Arthur and Mildred Watkins had one day. Try to put yourself in their shoes, what would you do if you won the lottery?



Unit 2. BUYING FOODSTUFFS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

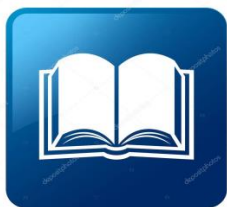
- What do you understand by the term ‘convenience store’? In what ways are they convenient?
- Do you usually shop at the supermarket, or do you prefer to use the local corner shop/ general store?
- What are the differences in terms of a) price, b) convenience, c) service, d) quality and variety of produce, and e) opening hours?
- How has the rise of supermarkets affected smaller local shops?
- Is there anything you would like to change in the work of shops, in the organization of services in our city / country? Write a list of suggestions.



BEFORE READING TASK

Look at the title. What might be the ‘cost of convenience’?

Now read the article about the advantages and disadvantages of convenience stores compared with supermarkets. Six paragraphs have been removed. Decide which of the paragraphs (A-G) fit into the gaps (1-6). There is one paragraph you do not need to use.



READING FOCUS 1

THE COST OF CONVENIENCE

How often have you sat comfortably at home and thought: Fresh chocolate croissants for breakfast would be nice, or freshly laid eggs, scrambled, with smoked salmon would **hit the spot**, but let it go because it's too much trouble to make yourself look presentable in public, get into something outdoorsy, find the car keys, get the car out of the garage – the list gets longer – and **you go off the boil**?

1	
---	--

If you live in a city, one or another of the big supermarkets chains will have opened such a store near you, and they all have plans for many, many more.

2	
---	--

It's not just the improvement in convenience store that is encouraging shoppers to stay local. By walking to the shop you not only help your health and the environment, you also save the cost of petrol. If you are one of the many people who only use the car for the weekend shop, you could **ditch** it altogether.

3	
---	--

Not surprisingly, owners of more old-fashioned, independent stores feel threatened. Their main fear is that the supermarkets' greater buying power will enable them to price the smaller stores out of the market.

4	
---	--

The difference doesn't look much in terms of pounds and pence – 10 p extra on six eggs, 3 p on a litre of fabric softener, 6 p more for 80 teabags compared with the prices in the main branches. But if you pop into your local mini supermarket on a regular basis, the premium prices soon add up.

5	
---	--

Supermarkets defend their policy, pointing out that **overheads**, vary from one type of store to another: "We have a national pricing policy, so our prices are the same in similar formats throughout the country. Prices do, however, vary between our differing formats as their resourcing requirements and cost structure vary. For example, our 'local' convenience stores are open longer hours, and are generally in higher cost locations, such as city centers."

6	
---	--

If you are one of those who can't resist nipping in to your 'local' shop, there are several ways to contain costs. Draw up a shopping list and stick to it. Cook from scratch if you have time; pre-prepared food costs more. Only take up

special offers, such as three for the price of two, if it applies to items you use regularly, and **supplement** with items from cheaper sources when possible – fruit and vegetables from your local market or farm shop, and the supermarket's own-brand tinned, frozen and other general groceries.

Remember there is one paragraph you do not need to use.

A. The contrast between these smaller versions of the supermarkets and the traditional 'open all the hours' impression we have of local corner shops could not be greater. They carry a wide range of **stock** that is attractively packaged, have good clear layouts and often offer cash back or have cash points. It's not only quick to shop there, but easy and, on the whole pleasant as well.

B. Even if the item you have gone to buy costs the normal price, the impulse to buy other products can cost you dearly. Research has shown that someone popping in to their local convenience store intending to buy only some bread would, on average, spend a total of £1,208 on products over just one year from that store.

C. On the other hand, smaller store are more 'front heavy' in comparison to larger branches. This is because rates are higher per square footage at the front of a store than further back, so they end up paying more in comparison to their size.

D. It is true that their smaller outlets do face proportionately higher costs, partly because they are selling smaller quantities of goods, partly because of staffing requirements and partly because they have to pay higher council rates. Even so, you might expect customers to occasionally resent having to pay 15% more for, say, brand name tea bags just for the convenience. But no, according to research, consumers are queuing up to pay.

E. A couple of years ago you did have to face driving several miles to your nearest supermarket to find such treats. But the advent of a new breed of 'mini' supermarket has changed all that; now you can saunter to the end of your road to buy whatever the TV chef of the day has just recommended. But are you paying over the odds for accessibility?

F. In reality, however, while large supermarkets **undercut** traditional convenience stores on a core range of products, on others they hike up the prices. An investigation conducted in several London stores showed that customers were paying between four and seven per cent more in supermarket convenience stores compared with the prices for exactly the same products in the larger format stores.

G. Buying a small amount of food daily, rather than driving a huge weekly shop can cut down on wastage of food, ending the discovery of rotting vegetable lurking in the crisper. Best of all, you avoid the agony of slogging around the supermarket for at least an hour on Saturday or Sunday.

<http://www.english-magazine.com>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Look at the highlighted words and phrases in the text. Match them with synonyms from the list below.

- 1) goods / produce;
- 2) essential expenses;
- 3) be just the right thing;
- 4) add something to;
- 5) sell more cheaply;
- 6) abandon /get rid of;
- 7) lose enthusiasm.

2. Answer the following questions.

What is the meaning of the words in bold?

- 1) ... encouraging shoppers to **stay local**;
- 2) ... enable them to **price the smaller stores out of the market**;
- 3) ... the impulse to buy other products can **cost you dearly**;
- 4) ... their smaller outlets do **face proportionately higher costs**...;
- 5) ... ending the discovery of **rotting vegetables, lurking in the crisper**.

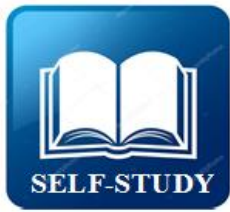
3. Make a list of pros and cons about doing your shopping at supermarkets, local corner shops and markets.



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- To what extent do you think you might be influenced by modern marketing techniques and advertising to buy products?



READING FOCUS 2

Read the text about the science of shopping and then do the exercises to check your understanding.

THE WAY THE BRAIN BUYS

It may have occurred to you, during the course of a dismal trawl round supermarket indistinguishable from every other supermarket you have ever been into, to wonder why they are all the same. The answer is more sinister than depressing. It is not because the companies that operate them lack imagination. It is because they are all versed in science of persuading people to buy things – a science that, thanks to technological advances, is beginning to unlock the innermost secrets of the consumer mind.

Shoppers already know that everyday items, like milk, are invariably placed towards the back of a store to provide more opportunity to tempt customers. This is why pharmacies are generally at the rear, even in “convenience” stores. But supermarkets know shoppers know this, so they use other tricks, like placing popular items halfway along a section so that people have to walk all along the aisle looking for them. The idea is to boost “dwell time”: the length of time people spend in a store.

Traditionally retailers measure “footfall”, as the number of people entering a store is known, but those numbers say nothing about where people go and how long they spend time there. But nowadays, a ubiquitous piece of technology can fill the gap: by mobile phone. Path Intelligence, a British company working with the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, tracked people’s phones at Gunwharf Quays, a large retail and leisure centre in Portsmouth – not by monitoring calls, but by plotting the position of handsets as they transmit automatically to cellular networks. It found that when dwell time rose 1% sales rose 1.3%.

Most of the information that shoppers are bombarded with is visual: labels, price stickers and advertising. But the wafting bread aroma shows smell can usefully be stimulated too, says Simon Harrop, chief executive of BRAND sense agency, a British specialist in multi-sensory marketing. In the aisle by the laundry section he suggests introducing the smell of freshly laundered sheets. Even the sound of sheets being folded could be reproduced here and contained within the area

using the latest audio technology. The Aroma Company, which Mr Harrop founded, has put the smell of coconut, so the scent is supposed to remind people of past holidays. The company even infuses the fresh smell of citrus into a range of clothing made by Odeur, a Swedish company. It can waft for up to 13 washes.

Such techniques are increasingly popular because of a deepening understanding about how shoppers make choices. People tell market researchers and “focus groups” that they make rational decisions about what to buy, considering things price, selection or convenience. But subconscious forces, involving emotion and memories, are clearly also at work.

Retailers and producers talk about the “moment of truth”. This is not a philosophical notion, but the point when people standing in the aisle decide what to buy and reach to get it. The Basingstoke store illustrates some of the ways used to get shoppers’ hands to wobble in the direction of a particular product. At the instant coffee selection, for example, branded products from big producers are arranged at eye-level while cheaper ones are lower down, along with the supermarket’s own-label products.

Technology is making the process of monitoring shopper behavior easier – which is why the security cameras in a store may be doing a lot more than simply watching out for theft. Rajeev Sharma, of Pennsylvania State University, founded a company called Video Mining to automate the process. It uses image-recognition software to scan the pictures from security cameras of shoppers while they are making their selections. It is capable of looking at the action of hundreds of thousands of people. It can measure how many went straight to one brand, the number that dithered and those that compared several, at the same time as sorting shoppers by age, gender and ethnicity.

The Economist
<https://www.economist.com>



POST-READING TASK

1. Decide if the following statements are true, false or not given.

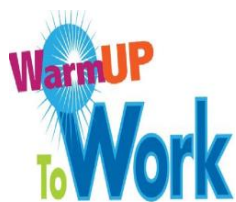
1. Supermarkets are similar in layout because the companies do not have imagination.
2. Commonly bought items are occasionally put at the back of the supermarket.

3. Putting popular products midway down aisle encourages customers to wander round the shop more in order find something new.
4. Path Intelligence is a successful company, well know with universities.
5. Path Intelligence was able to monitor where people's handsets were.
6. Customers can be influence by aromas.
7. The moment of truth is when people decide what they can afford.
8. More cameras have been placed in supermarkets to record customer behavior.
9. The position of cameras is strategically planned to encourage people to buy brand names.

2. Complete the sentences below with the correct word(s) taken from the passage. Use no more than three words and /or a number.

1. Supermarkets are highly experienced in the ... of persuasion.
2. Popular items are placed strategically in aisles to increase... .
3. Research showed that there was a positive correlation between dwell time and
4. Smells reminiscent of previous vacations have been used to influence customers in the
5. Brand name products are often placed at ... in the Basingstoke store.

Unit 3. CLOTHES AND FASHION



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- What is all the rage in your country at the moment?
- When was the last time you got dressed up to the nines?
- Do men and women have the same shopping habits when they buy clothes?
- What do you think about people who are a slave to fashion?
- What would you wear on a dress-down Friday at work?
- What sort of people start new fashion trends?
- What style in clothes do you prefer and why?
- What item of clothing would you most like to have made-to-measure?

FIT LIKE A GLOVE

Meaning

TO FIT PERFECTLY

THE WOMAN'S NEW DRESS
FIT LIKE A GLOVE SO SHE
WAS VERY HAPPY

DRESSED TO THE NINES

Meaning

**WEARING VERY FASHIONABLE
OR EXPENSIVE CLOTHES**

I'M GOING TO **DRESS TO THE NINES**
TONIGHT BECAUSE I'M MEETING
MY GIRLFRIEND'S PARENTS
FOR THE FIRST TIME



- Look at the picture below and say what type of shoes do you usually choose for everyday wear and for special occasions? What is more important for you comfort or style?
- Can you explain the meaning of the following idioms “if the shoe fits, wear it”; “to put the shoe on the right foot”, “to be in someone’s shoes”, “where the shoe pinches”; “to wait for the other shoe to drop”? Use your dictionary to help you.





LANGUAGE FOCUS

Read the text carefully and try to explain the idioms in bold.

Bert had never **been hand in glove** with Mrs Jameson, our boss. One day, Mrs Jameson told him he had to **pull his socks up**. Bert told her to **belt up** and threatened to give her **a sock in the jaw**. She **gave him the boot** and I had to **step into his shoes**. The next day, Bert came to the office **dressed up to the nines**. He told Mrs Jameson he didn't want to be without a job and **live on a shoestring**. He said he was **keeping something up his sleeve**, which he could use against the company, but would **keep it under his hat** if she gave him his job back. Mrs Jameson **laughed up her sleeve** at this and told Bert he was **talking through his hat**. I had to **take my hat off to her**.



POST-READING TASK

This is definitely an exaggerated use of idiomatic expressions. But you can see how these expressions make spoken informal language much more colourful and jovial. How good is your idiom intuition? Here are some expressions which you can use to substitute the clothes idioms in the short text above.

Non-idiomatic Expressions	Clothes Idioms
1. secretly	a.
2. admire	b.
3. sacked him	c.
4. had a plan which he was keeping secret	d.
5. be quiet	e.
6. wearing his very best clothes	f.
7. nonsense	g.
8. secret hit her hard worked closely	h.
9. try to do better	i.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

Read the text carefully and try to explain the idioms in bold.

Some people get angry easily. You have to be careful and **handle them with kid gloves**. My boss is always angry. He's always **hot under the collar** about something. If sales are bad, he gets very nervous. He's afraid that he's going to lose everything. He thinks he's about **to lose his shirt**. But the business never makes very much money. We always run **on a shoestring**. In business, you have to be calm and keep your temper. You have **to keep your shirt on**. Our business might be better if my boss could stay calm. Still, I prefer to be me than to have my boss's job. I don't want **to be in his shoes**. He's under too much pressure.



POST-READING TASK

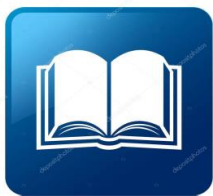
This is definitely an exaggerated use of idiomatic expressions. But you can see how these expressions make spoken informal language much more colourful and jovial. How good is your idiom intuition? Here are some expressions which you can use to substitute the clothes idioms in the short text above.

Non-idiomatic Expressions

1. angry
2. with very little money
3. not to get angry, to be patient
4. to be careful not to anger someone
5. to lose a lot of money
6. to be in the place of someone else

Clothes Idioms

- a.
- b.
- c.
- d.
- e.
- f.



READING FOCUS 1

THE FASHION WORLD WILL LOOK VERY DIFFERENT IN THE DISTANT FUTURE

Get ready for styles that change color and shape, and even respond to your body temperature. There's lots of other work being done in science and technology that will change the way we dress. Whether it's about controlling devices through the cuff of a sleeve, or quickly shortening the length of our skirts for a night out, here's some of the clothing-related technologies you can look forward to in the future.

Clothes That Change Color

This one is a no-brainer. Why wouldn't we want our white T-shirts to change to a darker grey if we spill something on them, or a polka dot dress to shift to stripes when we spot someone else wearing the same one? In the future, being able to change the color of your look will be easy. The Unseen, a London-based science and design firm, is already experimenting in this space, creating clothes that can change color via app.

Jeans That Communicate

Walk into a tech conference, and you'll see lots of people speaking into the Apple Watches on their wrists. But interactions with the items on our bodies are about to get even weirder. Next year, Google will launch Project Jacquard with Levi's, weaving conductive yarn into jeans to allow touch interactivity on the fabric itself. The idea is to provide simple functionalities that will free us from using our mobile phones all of the time – like being able to request an Uber, silence our phones, take a selfie or even turn a light bulb on or off. It might sound wacky now, but more seamless interactions are the way of the future.

Clothes That Charge Your Other Devices

Phone-charging jackets and accessories have been out in the market for a while. Last year, Tommy Hilfiger launched a jacket with a small portable battery and solar panels attached to the back, while Dutch designer Pauline van Dongen has a great looking T-shirt that does the same job. In the future, designers will harness energy from our bodies for a charge.

Jackets with Body Temperature Controls

In everyday clothes, you're often hot one minute and cold the next. Wearable tech's future will be about being able to control your body temperature through your coat. Ever sat in one of those cars with heated seats? Imagine something like that, but far more stylish. And there's no reason why you couldn't then connect your body temperature information from your outerwear with your thermostat at home so your apartment is just the right temperature once you walk in, too.

Styles That Shift in Shape

Shape-shifting styles are a bit further away in the future, but they're not a complete pipe dream. A video released by Lacoste set the tone, showing clothes that shift color, sleeves that lengthen and silhouettes that grow slimmer. This kind of technology is based on complicated fiber science – i.e. changing the molecular structures of textiles – but it's something that researchers at the likes of OMsignal, the technology company behind that PoloTech shirt from Ralph Lauren, are working on. Pauline van Dongen is also exploring how 3D printing can be used to achieve such changes, adapting structural flexibilities so items can be more tightly woven at one point, and more open at another.

It's not impossible to imagine a future where a single dress could change color, sleeve and hem length depending on the occasion; maintain the right temperature in response to the environment; and be used to charge a dying phone battery or send a message to a loved one, too. In the future, we'll be surprised just how little our clothes once did for us

<https://www.sciencenewsforstudents.org>



SPEAKING TASK

Answer the following questions.

1. What will clothes look like in the future?
2. How will technology change the future of fashion?
3. Fashion trends are difficult to follow these days and it's widely believed that they primarily exist just to sell clothes. Some people believe that we shouldn't follow them and that we should dress in what we like and feel comfortable in. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion? Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

ALL THE RAGE: CLOTHES AND FASHION

A. Dressing for work

Many students, both male and female, would agree that they often look **scruffy** in their T-shirts and jeans. However, those who go into the world of business have to make a rapid transition and learn about **dress codes** in the workplace. Business **attire** needs to project a professional image, and clothing that reveals too much **cleavage** (for women), or your back, your chest or your **midriff** is not appropriate, even in a casual business setting.

For women, see-through **fabrics** should be avoided, and skirts should not be too tight or too short, though nobody wants to look **frumpy**. For men, trousers should not be too tight, or shirts too open.

Women often need a good choice of **outfits** and men find a good range of suits, ties and casual trousers and jackets **invaluable**. **Accessories**, e.g. jewellery, shoes and **cufflinks**, can also enhance the professional look. Some offices have **dress-down days**, often Fridays, when staff can wear more casual clothes.



attire – clothing.

cufflinks – decorative objects used to fasten the cuffs on men's shirts.

dress code – accepted way of dressing in a particular social group.

dress-down days – days when people wear less formal clothes.

frumpy – old-fashioned and boring.

outfit – set of clothes for a particular occasion.

scruffy – untidy [noun: scruff – person who dresses in an untidy way].

B. Words and expressions about clothes

Clothes can be described as **revealing, skimpy, baggy, clingy**, or **chic**. Sometimes an invitation to a more formal party will ask people to dress in **smart-casual** clothes. To be dolled (up) / dressed up / done up to the nines means to be dressed in a very fashionable or very formal way.

Some people choose to buy designer (label) clothes but most people prefer to buy clothes more cheaply **on the High Street**¹. People who can afford to sometimes have clothes **made-to-measure**, but more often people buy their clothes **off the peg/rack**.

C. Being in fashion

1. These jackets are **all the rage**. [very fashionable]
 2. The woman was dressed in **the very latest fashion**. [an extremely fashionable way]
 3. Dresses like this are **the height of fashion**. [very fashionable]
 4. The magazine has up-to-the-minute fashion articles. [dealing with the most recent trends]
 5. The film has **set a new trend** for the silk top the star wore. [started a new fashion]
 6. **A trend-setter** is a person whose style is followed by others.
 7. High heels are **on trend** this year. [fashionable]
 8. Large handbags are this year's **must-have item**. [thing that everyone wants]
- If a fashion/trend catches on, it becomes popular.
9. A **slave to fashion** is someone who is strongly influenced by fashion. [used in a disapproving way]
 10. Your new outfit really **suits** you. [looks good on you]

D. Clothes in metaphors

- 1) to speak **off the cuff** [without having prepared anything];
- 2) **to be hand in glove with someone** [to have a close working relationship with someone] to do something;
- 3) **on a shoestring** [spending as little as possible];
- 4) **no frills** [simple and plain];
- 5) **to put someone in a straitjacket** [restrict someone's freedom];
- 6) **to draw a veil over** something [not to talk about something];
- 7) **to have something up your sleeve** [to have a secret plan or idea].

[https:// www.englishlandlearn.com](https://www.englishlandlearn.com)

¹from ordinary, much less expensive shops



POST-READING TASKS

1. Answer the following questions.

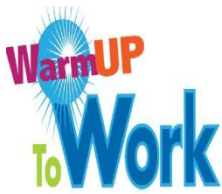
1. What is your favourite outfit?
2. What is the dress code in a workplace you are familiar with?
3. What kinds of clothes are not appropriate for a job interview?
4. What might be appropriate clothes to wear for a job interview for a man and for a woman?
5. What do you mean if you call someone 'scruffy'?
7. What would you put on if you had a dress-down day at work?
- 8.. If a woman says she finds a particular outfit 'invaluable', does she mean it's very expensive, extremely useful or absolutely useless?

2. Fill the gaps with words or phrases from B or C opposite.

1. Wow, you're done up to ...! Where on earth are you going?
2. The sign outside the bar said: 'Dress code: ... – no jeans or trainers.'
3. I'm surprised to see girls wearing such ... dresses in this cold weather.
4. I can't afford ... clothes. I buy most of my outfits on the
5. Lucy is always dressed in the ... of fashion – she always looks very ...!
6. As soon as Amy gets home from work, she changes from her smart suit into tracksuit bottoms and a comfortable, ..., old jumper.
7. Very high heels remain ... trend this season.
8. These bracelets were last year's ... -have item.

3. Rewrite the underlined parts of these sentences using phrases from D opposite.

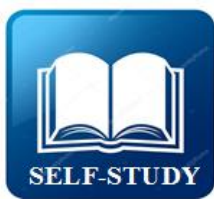
1. I'm no good at speaking **if I haven't had time to prepare what I want to say.**
2. Simon is bound to have **some plan in readiness** for tomorrow's meeting.
3. I think we should **keep quiet** about what happened on Monday, don't you?
4. Be careful what you say to Helen – **she works very closely** with the boss.
5. The new legislation **means we are not able to act as we wish.**
6. We'll still have a great party even if we have to do it **as cheaply as possible.**



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- Are you a fashion slave, spending all your money on the latest clothes even if you don't look good in them, or a fashion fan, enjoying wearing modern clothes but not obsessed by them?
- Are you a fashion slave?



READING FOCUS 2

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

FASHION FAN OR FASHION SLAVE?

Every year London Fashion Week attracts retailers, fashion leaders, and the press to shows of all that's new in British fashion. Outrageous designs, original fabrics, and beautiful slim models are displayed on the catwalk in an atmosphere of extravagant elegance. However, how much of this gets translated into street fashion, appearing in high street shops? And how many of us actually follow the trends we see?

We all need to be comfortable with what we wear. After all, first impressions count, and we want our appearance to be consistent with the image we would like to project. How can we do this without becoming a fashion slave? We are bombarded with magazines that show us the new fashions for each season, and where we can buy trendy clothes for reasonable prices. The distinction between what we see on the catwalk and what's on display in the high street is becoming increasingly blurred.

Our bodies all come in different shapes and sizes, so to avoid stares and sniggers in the street we should develop our own shopping strategy. Lisa Armstrong, fashion writer for The Times newspaper, has questioned the motives of some designers, suggesting they seem out to get women, or at least make them look foolish. So could the habit of showing female models part-naked, or in poses suggesting bondage, betray an element of misogyny in the industry? And are fashion shows a cynical ploy to get the media in a froth or a valuable marketing tool for an important industry?

<https://www.bbc.co.uk>

[illegible]

129



LANGUAGE FOCUS

CLOTHES IDIOMS

1. Match the idioms with their definitions.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. (to have a) bee in your bonnet | a. stressed / angry |
| 2. below the belt | b. to be the boss |
| 3. to buckle down | c. not prepared in advance |
| 4. hot under the collar | d. fixed idea |
| 5. off-the-cuff | e. to work hard |
| 6. to keep your shirt on | f. to prepare to work |
| 7. a feather in your cap | g. smth to be proud of |
| 8. to put a sock in it | h. try to stay calm |
| 9. to roll up your sleeves | i. to be quiet |
| 10. to wear the trousers | j. unfair and cruel |

2. Fill in the gaps with clothes idioms from the exercise above.

1. Dave doesn't mind making speeches, but he hates speaking
2. He'll have to ... soon if he wants to pass his finals.
3. Adam's mum definitely ... in their household.
4. The driver got... when the pedestrian started shouting at him.
5. Mary has... about her nose being too big.
6. Mark's comment about my girlfriend leaving was a bit... .
7. The plane doesn't land for another hour, so
8. There's a lot of work to do, so
9. Please, ... ! Your constant talking is getting on my nerves!
10. They are proud of Dave. It's a real ... to be representing the university in the regional final.

3. Replace the underlined words with idioms from exercise 1.

1. That was a brilliant speech, considering you made it **without any preparation**.
2. Ann's comment about his inability to make a relationship work was **cruel and unfair**.

3. Whenever Ted's parents get onto the subject of his school marks they often, end up getting **angry**.

4. The meeting may be pretty unpleasant, so promise me **you'll try to stay calm**.

5. Congratulations on getting into the football team. That's another **achievement you can feel very proud of**.

6. Sarah is always **thinking and worrying** about her weight.

7. I don't think there's any doubt about who **is the boss** in their relationship.

8. Sam, **be quiet**, please! Some of us are trying to work around here!

4. Match 1-7 with a-g to form other clothes idioms. Then find their definitions given below.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. to have smth up | a. socks up |
| 2. to have your hat | b. birthday suit |
| 3. in somebody's | c. your sleeve |
| 4. to be in your | d. off to someone |
| 5. to fit like | e. shoes |
| 6. to tighten | f. a glove |
| 7. to pull your | g. your belt |

1) to make an effort to do better, to improve;

2) to have a secret plan;

3) to spend less money;

4) naked as the day you were born;

5) to express respect for someone;

6) to be the perfect size and shape for someone;

7) to be in the same situation as someone else.



SPEAKING TASK

Speak about your last shopping for clothes in a big department store / in a shopping mall / online.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. Read the sentences below, pay attention to the use of phrasal verbs.

Actions connected with clothing and appearance.

1. **Roll up** one's sleeves.
2. **Zip up** a jacket
3. The trousers are too short, so **let them down**.
4. Tie back your hair the children love **dressing up**.
5. The trousers are too long, so **take them up**.

2. Answer the questions.

1. What other item of clothing can you roll up apart from your sleeves?
2. What else can you zip up apart from a jacket?
3. Do you know the opposite of zip up?
4. What other things apart from trousers can be let down or taken up?
5. What do you think you are doing to trousers if you (a) let them out or (b) take them in?
6. What sort of clothes do people put on when they dress up, for example as a famous person, or as someone from another historical age?

DRESSING UP TO GO OUT

Lottie is telling Alice about a party she went to.

Lottie Most people looked really smart – there were some amazing designer outfits – but there was one man in a weird **getup** with a red wig. It looked as if he thought it was a fancy-dress party!

Alice (laughs) What did you wear?

Lottie Well, to tell you the truth, it was rather a disaster. I wanted to wear my little black dress, but I had trouble **getting into** it. I didn't realise how much weight I've put on over the past few months. I'll have to **let it out** or else lose some weight! When I'd finally squeezed into it, I looked so awful in the mirror I just took it straight off again and **pulled on** my boring old brown dress. You know, the wool one with the full skirt that I've worn a million times.

Alice Oh, I like that dress.

Lottie Well, so do I, but it was all creased and I didn't have time to iron it, so I just **smoothed** it **down** with my hands and hoped for the best. I was so late by this time, I didn't realise till I got to the party that I had the wrong colour shoes on. I was still wearing my sister's **cast-offs**, which go perfectly with my black dress but not with my brown one! But it didn't really matter because when the music started, I **flung** my shoes **off** to dance anyway.



POST-READING TASKS

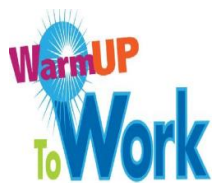
1. Choose the correct word to complete these sentences.

1. I had no time to think about what I looked like, so I on my old jeans.
a) rolled b) pulled c) let d) took
2. Come on – time to up your sleeves and get down to work.
a) pull b) zip c) roll d) tie
3. Sienna stood up, down her skirt and began to address the audience.
a) smoothed b) got c) tied d) zipped
4. To my embarrassment I suddenly realised that I my T-shirt on backwards.
a) took b) had c) got d) let
5. I ate so much on holiday that I had difficulty into my suit today.
a) pulling b) dressing c) getting d) zipping
6. Do we need to up for the party tomorrow?
a) zip b) fling c) tie d) dress
7. I was so tired that I just off my clothes and fell into bed.
a) rolled b) got c) flung d) let
8. When I was a child I always hated wearing my older brother's -offs.
a) let b) cast c) get d) zip

2. Complete these sentences with the correct phrasal verb expression from the opposite page.

1. My ten-year-old daughter loves getting in my dresses and... high-heeled shoes.
2. Now that I'm pregnant I can't... any of my clothes.
3. Those trousers look a little tight around the waist. Shall I ...a bit for you?
4. You'd better... your jacket .It's cold outside.

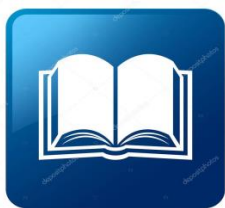
Unit 4. SHOPPING HABITS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- How often do you go on a spending spree?
- What are your shopping habits? Please explain.
- When you go shopping what influences you more – price, quality, the layout of the shop, etc.?
- Are you a bargain-hunter? Do you tend to wait for the sales before buying things?
- Have you ever bought something on impulse and then regretted it? If so, what was it and what made you buy it?
- What's the best bargain you have ever bought?



READING FOCUS 1

Read the article to complete the task after the text.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF SHOPPERS

With a plethora of shopping malls available to city dwellers today, be it a well-established shopping mall in town or a new chic boutique in our neighborhood, consumerism is definitely on the rise in many cities around the world and is showing no signs of slowing down anywhere in the near future. People of all ages engage in some form of shopping every now and then, whether they enjoy it or not; some people shop out of necessity, whereas others do it for leisure. No matter what your reasons for shopping are, all of us have our own unique shopping habits that are closely linked to our personality and spending power. Thus, our shopping habits can be a rather accurate reflection of our character, though this may not always be true as there may be other factors influencing our decision when it comes to making a purchase at a store, such as the lack of resources or time. Also, the various types of shoppers tend to end

up spending different amounts of money after each shopping trip, with some who spend way over their budget, and others who keep it close to theirs, or even end up not buying anything at all. Therefore, I believe that shoppers can be categorized according to their shopping habits into five main groups. These are the five types of shoppers ranked according to their tendency to overspend: the impulse shopper, the bargain shopper, the target shopper, the fussy shopper and the window shopper.

First, we have the **impulse shoppers** who buy things mostly based on their whims and fancies. These are the people who are most likely to end up overspending, as their spending habits depend greatly on their emotional state. They may not have anything in particular which they want to buy, but will still go on a shopping spree or engage in ‘retail therapy’ when they are feeling down or upset. In the recent decade, ‘retail therapy’ has become the new found solution for urban folks to deal with the high level of stress they face at work or in school. For those who engage in ‘retail therapy’, they believe that spending money or buying something new from a store can help to elevate their mood by distracting them from their existing problems or unhappiness.

The beautiful displays in front of the stores also attract these impulsive shoppers like bees to pollen grains. They are also very easily persuaded by the salesperson in the store to purchase the goods, especially when they receive compliments from others in the store or even patronizing ones from the salesperson. Hence, even though they may not know exactly what they want or need when they first enter the store, these shoppers usually walk out of the store with a handful of bags, full of their new purchases. Instant gratification from buying something new is usually more important than keeping to their budget for these people, thus, reality usually only hits them when they receive their bills at the end of the each month and get a shock out of it. More often than not, these shoppers end up regretting their many impulse purchases and may even try to return them to the store and request for a refund.

Next, there are the **bargain shoppers** who are constantly hunting for discounts at the stores. These shoppers love looking out for all sorts of available discounts at the shopping mall, be it a store-wide discount, a member’s discount or even a credit card discount. Some of these shoppers even limit themselves to only buying items that are on sale. They enjoy the thrill of being able to acquire items at a lower retail price, and often feel that they got themselves a really good deal from the sale at the store. Shopping is more of a leisure activity for these people and walking around the mall looking for store discounts add on to the joy and excitement of shopping. Even though it is true that these bargain shoppers often buy their goods at a lower price, they usually end up buying a lot more other

items on sale at the store which they do not really require. A common excuse they will give themselves is that they are actually saving a significant amount of money in the long run by getting everything they need during the sale. Hence, they also have a tendency to overspend despite their aim of trying to reduce their own spending by purchasing only items on sale.

Third, we have the **target shoppers**. These people are usually very fast shoppers as they deem shopping as more of a task or chore than a leisure activity. Generally, this group of shoppers consists mostly of men, as they prefer not to waste their time walking around aimlessly at a shopping mall. They will usually have a list of items they want or need to purchase before heading down to the stores to look for them. Planning before shopping is very important to this group of shoppers, as they do not like wasting their time walking around the store to browse for things they need to purchase. They will mostly stick to their shopping list and head straight to the section of the store to get those required items and proceed on to the cashier for payment. Efficiency is of utmost importance when it comes to shopping for these people. Target shoppers shop mostly out of mere necessity, as they do not enjoy the process of leisure shopping, unlike the bargain and impulse shoppers. Thus, they tend to keep to their budget as it is quite unlikely for them to purchase anything that is not in their shopping list.

Then, there are the **fussy shoppers** who are nightmares for many sales assistants at the stores. These shoppers can be very indecisive and always take an obscenely long time before settling on a purchase. They will often terrorize the sales assistants at the store with a myriad of unreasonable requests. These hard-to-please shoppers will often linger in the store for a very long time while browsing through every item before picking out a few that they fancy. Even after selecting those items that they want to buy, these picky shoppers will take their own sweet time to consider if they should purchase the selected items. They also like to bombard the salesperson with difficult questions about the items they plan to buy. If they are given a satisfactory answer, they will then proceed on to examining the items in detail to look out for any minor flaws while reconsidering if they are worth their prices before heading to the cashier for payment. Sometimes, these overly fastidious shoppers may not even buy anything at all despite trying on a myriad of displayed items and asking a truck load of questions about the shop or a particular item for sale, as they only want to buy the best despite being on a budget. As a result, these fussy shoppers are usually able to keep to their budget for shopping as they often have a hard time finding things at the stores to buy, especially with their demanding shopping criteria.

Lastly, we have the **window shoppers** who mainly walk around the shopping mall aimlessly. In most shopping malls, the bulk to the crowd is made up of such window shoppers. These people range from students who do not wish to go home after school, to couples who are on a date, to housewives who are bored at home. These shoppers are the exact opposite of target shoppers, as they view shopping as a form of leisure and enjoy walking around the mall even if they are not planning to buy anything at all. They often appear in pairs or groups, and may only walk around to admire the new items displayed on the racks of the stores or casually browse through them, as they have no intention of making a purchase. They may even try on different items in the stores but will most probably leave the store empty handed. For this group of shoppers, the joy of shopping lies mainly in the process and not the outcome of it. Therefore, they may not spend any money at all most of the time unless something interests them along the course of shopping.

These are the five main groups of shoppers that can be found at any shopping outlet and most of us will probably be able to relate to one of these types of shoppers. Shopping has become such a vital part of our lives in today's world, thus, it is essential for us to identify our own shopping habits in order to avoid overspending on unnecessary things and also help us gain the most out of our shopping trips.

<https://www.learnenglish.britishcouncil.org>



POST-READING TASK

Check your understanding: true or false

1. Impulse shoppers spend money or buy something new from a store because it can help to elevate their mood by distracting them from their existing problems.
2. Fussy shoppers shop mostly out of mere necessity, as they do not enjoy the process of leisure shopping.
3. Window shoppers are usually able to keep to their budget for shopping as they often have a hard time finding things at the stores to buy.
4. Target shoppers are mostly women, as they prefer not to waste their time walking around aimlessly at a shopping mall.
5. Bargaining shoppers enjoy the thrill of being able to acquire items at a lower retail price, and often feel that they got themselves a really good deal from the sale at the store.



SPEAKING TASK

Discuss in small groups.

- Would you consider yourself a shopaholic? Why/not?
- Do you know anyone who might be a shopaholic?
- Do you agree that women and men suffer from the problem equally?
- Do you agree that anxiety and low self-esteem cause compulsive buying?
- Do you agree that compulsive buying causes problems in the family and with relationships?
- Why do you think the number of shopaholics has increased in the past fifteen years? Please explain.
- What solutions are there for people who are shopaholics? How can they be helped?





LANGUAGE FOCUS

Fill in the blanks in this short text with the correct word.

accumulated	sounds	brackets	regardless	deteriorate
anxiety	consider	maxed out	concludes	prone
disagree	impulse	harm	compulsive	accompanying

The lives of some people are focused on shopping. They repeatedly make purchases (1)... of need or cost. Some of these people buy things on (2)... . Some of these people have closets with unopened purchases. Some of these people have (3)... huge amounts of credit card debt. If this (4)... like you, then you may be a shopaholic.

A recent test revealed that 9% of people are shopaholics. Another similar test showed a slightly smaller percentage of 6%. This new data (5)... an increase in the number of shopaholics from fifteen years ago. The data also concludes that men are just as (6)... to the shopping urge as women. The test consisted of six statements which people answered on a 7-point scale, from strongly agree to strongly (7)... . Some statements included:

- Much of my life centers around buying things.
- I buy things I didn't plan to buy.
- Others might (8)... me a shopaholic.

(9)... buying obviously leads to financial problems such as an empty bank account and (10)... credit cards. Yet these unneeded and unwanted purchases may be the sign of more serious problems, namely depression, (11)... , and low self-esteem. In addition, relationships and family harmony also (12)... because of arguments over the purchases. Shopaholics may then hide the things they have bought, as well as the (13)... costs, and thus add to the strain. It's a problem that affects people of all income (14)... .

Researchers suggest that shopaholics felt better when they were shopping, even when they realized the (15)... it caused.



POST-READING TASKS

1. Check your understanding: true or false.

1. According to the article, shopaholics are people obsessed with shopping.
2. Less people suffer from compulsive buying than in the past.
3. According to the article, more women than man are shopaholics.
4. Shopaholics may also suffer from anxiety and low self-esteem.
5. Both rich people and poor people suffer from compulsive buying.

2. Answer the following questions.

1. According to the article, what is a shopaholic?
2. What percent of people suffer from this problem?
3. What kind of test was used in the research?
4. What problems may cause compulsive buying?
5. What does the article say about shopaholics and their families?

Go Dutch

Meaning

To share the cost of something.

I don't want you to pay for my ticket.
Let's go Dutch.

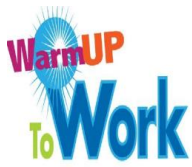
Tighten your belt

Meaning

To spend less money.

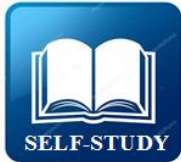
I've had to tighten my belt since I stopped working full-time.





WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups what problems are caused by compulsive shopping and spending?



READING FOCUS 2

A NATION OF SHOPAHOLICS

It's the sort of thing men joke about in the pub. 'My wife's addicted to shopping', they'll say, while their mates grin and nod sympathetically.

A study suggests however, that the compulsion to buy may be a growing problem, affecting as many as one in five people, and in extreme cases leading to family breakup and financial ruin. [1]

The number of people who confess to being shopaholics has grown from fifteen percent to twenty-two percent of the population in five years. And while twenty-nine percent of women admit to being addicted, so do fifteen percent of men. Shopping is no longer simply a way of providing essentials for the family, say market researchers, to many women it is more like a hobby.

True, many people have more money to spend these days. Personal disposable income has risen in twenty years. However, what they buy is not necessarily what they can afford.

Over the same period, the number of people using credit cards has increased by four times, and consumer debt has trebled. [2]

A bank executive stole more than €150,000 from her employers and blew it on clothes and make-up to 'escape the stresses of being a working mother'. Lyne Harding hid her purchases from her husband, who had no idea of what she was doing. And she got away with it for four years. [3]

Spending sprees can be a symptom of serious personal problems, according to researchers who have studied the subject. There are 'revenge shoppers', who want to spite their husbands or boyfriends because they are unhappy with their relationships. There are those who need shopping trips to add excitement to their lives. Dr Helga Dittma, of the University of Sussex, believes habitual shopping – particularly for designer clothes and jewellery – is a symptom of a collapse of self-esteem. 'Addicts want not only the latest fashions, they want to feel like the sort of person who would normally own them, and to feel important, glamorous and loved'.

<https://www.bbc.co.uk>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Choose the synonyms to the given words according to the context. Reproduce the sentence from the text with the synonym chosen.

compulsion

- a) desire b) hope c) influence d) attempt

to afford

- a) to allow b) to supply c) to be able to buy d) to avail of

disposable

- a) the one you can spend freely b) the one you must save
c) intended to be used only once d) personal

2. The following passage is taken from the text above. Where does it go (1, 2 or 3)?

She went on huge spending sprees, sometimes spending thousands on designer clothes and make-up in one day. 'It was a vicious circle. I could not stop spending', she told the police after her arrest. 'It all started as an attempt to escape the demands of a full-time job, combined with looking after a home and children', she said.

Now the thirty-one-year-old mother of two is facing a jail sentence. A court heard that Harding would open bank accounts using fictitious names, authorized loans up to €15,000 a time.

3. Look at the following words from the text. Which of them are not associated with the noun money?

Income, debt, consumer, purchases, vicious, market, to afford, to revenge, an addict, bank account, loan.

4. Speak on the main causes of shopaholism and consequences it may have.

PAY THROUGH THE NOSE

Meaning

**TO PAY TOO MUCH MONEY
FOR SOMETHING**

IF YOU BRING A CAR INTO THE CITY,
YOU HAVE TO **PAY THROUGH THE
NOSE** FOR PARKING IT

MAKE ENDS MEET

Meaning

**TO HAVE JUST ENOUGH MONEY
TO PAY FOR THE THINGS THAT
YOU NEED**

I HAVE TO WORK AT TWO JOBS
TO **MAKE ENDS MEET**

BE IN QUEER STREET

Meaning

**TO BE IN A LOT OF TROUBLE,
ESPECIALLY FINANCIAL**

PETER MADE A FORTUNE ON
WALL STREET, BUT BY JANUARY
HE **WAS IN QUEER STREET**

**MONEY BURNS A HOLE
IN YOUR POCKET**

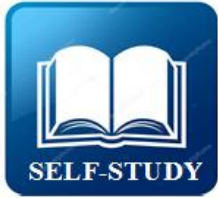
Meaning

**YOU CAN'T KEEP FROM
SPENDING MONEY**

AS SOON AS SHE GETS PAID SHE
GOES SHOPPING. **MONEY BURNS A
HOLE IN HER POCKET.**

5. Answer the following questions.

1. Why do you think shopping is an addiction?
2. Is shopping more addictive for men or women?
3. Do you think shopping addiction is a mental illness?
4. Have you ever been in debt?



READING FOCUS 3

THE MILLION POUND BANK NOTE

By Mark Twain

Chapter I From San Francisco to London

When I was 27 years old, I worked in an office in San Francisco. I did my job well and my future was promising. I was alone in the world and I was happy.

On Saturday afternoons I didn't work. I sailed my little sailboat on San Francisco Bay. One Saturday afternoon, I sailed out too far. The strong afternoon wind pushed my sailboat out of the bay, into the Pacific Ocean.

That night, when I had lost all hope, a small British brig saw me and took me on board. The brig was sailing to London. The voyage was long and stormy. I worked as a sailor to pay for my trip.

When I arrived in London, my clothes were old and dirty. I had only one dollar in my pocket. With this dollar, I ate and slept for the first twenty-four hours. During the next twenty-four hours, I didn't eat and didn't sleep.

At about ten o'clock the following morning, I went to Portland Place. I saw a child walking past, holding a big pear. The child ate one small piece and then threw the pear onto the street.

I stopped and looked at it.

I was very hungry and I really wanted that pear. But every time I tried to get it, someone passed by and looked at me. I quickly turned in the other direction and waited for the person to pass by. I tried again and again to get that pear, but the same thing happened. I was desperate. I decided to get the pear and not to worry about the people who saw me. At that moment, a gentleman opened a window behind me and said, "Come in here, please."

A well-dressed servant opened the door. He took me to a beautiful room.

Here, two old gentlemen were sitting and discussing something important.

Their breakfast was on the table. I was very hungry and I stared at their breakfast.

I want to tell the reader that the two gentlemen had made a bet several days before. I knew nothing about the bet until later. Let me tell you what happened.

Chapter II An Unusual Bet

The two old gentlemen were brothers. For several days, they argued about a very strange subject. They decided to end their argument with a bet, as the English usually do. The following was the subject of the bet.

The Bank of England issued two banknotes of a million dollars each for a public transaction with a foreign country. England used one banknote and the other remained in the bank.

At this point, Brother A said to Brother B, "If an honest and intelligent stranger arrives in London without a friend and without money, except for the \$1,000,000 banknote, he will starve to death."

Brother B answered, "No! I don't agree."

Brother A said, "If he goes to the bank or anywhere else to change this big note, the police will put him in prison. Everyone will think he stole it."

They continued arguing for days, until Brother B said, "I'll bet \$20,000 that the stranger will live for thirty days with the banknote and not go to prison."

Brother A accepted the bet. He went to the bank and bought the \$1,000,000 banknote. After, he returned home and prepared a letter. Then the two brothers sat by the window and waited for the right man for the bet.

They saw a lot of honest faces go by, but they were not intelligent enough. Several faces were intelligent, but they were not honest. A lot of faces were honest and intelligent, but they were not poor enough. Other faces were honest, intelligent and poor, but they were not strangers.

When they saw me from the window, they thought I was the right man. They asked me questions, and soon they knew my story. Finally, they told me I was the right man for the bet. I asked them to explain the bet. One of the gentlemen gave me an envelope. I wanted to open it, but he said, "No, don't open it now. Wait until you are in your hotel room. Then read it very carefully."

I was confused and I wanted to discuss the subject with them. But they didn't. I felt hurt because I was the subject of a joke.

When I left their house, I looked for the pear on the street. It was gone. I was quite angry with those two gentlemen.

Far from their house, I opened the envelope. I saw that there was money inside! I didn't stop to read their letter.

I ran to the nearest eating place. I ate and ate and ate. At last, I took out the envelope with the money, to pay for my meal. I looked at the banknote and almost fainted. It was a banknote worth five million dollars!

I was speechless. I stared at the banknote. The two gentlemen had made a big mistake.

They probably wanted to give me a one-dollar banknote.

I saw the owner of the eating place staring at the banknote, too. We were both surprised. I did not know what to do or say. So, I simply gave him the note and said, "Give me the change, please."

The owner apologized a thousand times.

"I'm very sorry, but I can't change this banknote, sir."

"I don't have any other money. Please change this note." The owner then said, "You can pay for this food whenever you want, sir. I understand that you are a very rich gentleman. You like playing jokes on people by dressing like a poor man. You can come here and eat all you want, whenever you want. You can pay me when you want."

Chapter III The Letter

When I arrived, the same servant opened the door. I asked for the two gentlemen.

"They are gone," the servant said.

"Gone? Gone where?"

"Oh, on a journey."

"But, where did they go?"

"To the Continent, I think."

"The Continent?"

There were no signature, no address, no date on the letter.

How strange! I didn't know what to think. I went to a park, sat down and thought about what to do. After an hour, I reached the decision that follows.

The two old gentlemen are playing a game that I don't understand. They are betting on me. (But, at that time, I didn't know anything about the details of the bet.)

If I go to the Bank of England to return the banknote, the bank will ask me lots of questions. If I tell the truth, no one will believe me. They will put me in an asylum. If I tell a lie, the police will put me in prison. I can't even give it to anyone, because no honest person will want it.

I can do only one thing: I must keep the bill for a whole month. And, I must not lose it. If I help the old man to win his bet, he will give me the job I want.

The idea of an important job with a big salary made me happy. With this exciting idea in mind, I began walking down the streets of London.

Chapter IV At the Tailor's

Every time I passed in front of a tailor's, I wanted to enter and buy some new clothes.

But, I had no money to pay for them. The \$1,000,000 banknote in my pocket was useless!

I passed in front of the same tailor's six times. At last I entered. I quietly asked if they had an old, unattractive suit that no one wanted to buy. The man I spoke to nodded his head, but he didn't speak. Then another man looked at me and nodded his head. I went to him and he said, "One moment, please."

After some time, he took me to a back room. He looked at several ugly suits that no one wanted. He chose the worst for me. I really wanted a suit, so I said nothing.

It was time to pay. "Can you wait a few days for the money? I haven't got any small change with me."

The man said, "Oh, you haven't? Well, I thought gentlemen like you carried large change."

"My friend," I replied, "you can't judge a stranger by the clothes he wears. I can pay for this suit. But, can you change a large banknote?"

"Oh, of course we can change a large banknote," he said coldly.

I gave him the banknote. He received it with a smile, a big smile that covered his face. When he read the banknote, his smile disappeared. The owner of the shop came over and asked me, "What's the trouble?"

"There isn't any trouble. I'm waiting for my change."

"Come, come. Give him his change, Tod. Quickly!"

Tod answered, "It's easy to say, but look at the banknote." The owner looked at the banknote. Then he looked at my package with the ugly suit.

"Tod," he shouted, "you are stupid! How can you sell this unattractive suit to a millionaire! Tod, you can't see the difference between a millionaire and a poor man."

"I apologize, sir," the owner continued. "Please take off those things you are wearing and throw them in the fire. Put on this fine shirt and this handsome suit. It's perfect for you – simple but elegant."

I told him I was very happy with the new suit.

"Oh, wait until you see what we can make for you in your size! Tod, bring a pen and a book. Let me measure your leg, your arm..."

I didn't have a moment to speak.

The owner measured me. Then he ordered his tailors to make me morning suits, evening suits, shirts, coats and other things.

"But, my dear sir," I said, "I can order all these things only if you change my banknote. Or, if you can wait a while before I pay you."

"Wait a while. I'll wait forever, that's the word. Tod, send these things to the gentleman's address. Let the less important customers wait! What's your address, sir?"

“I’m changing my home. I’ll come back and give you my new address,” I replied.

“Quite right, sir, quite right. Let me show you to the door, sir. Good day, sir, good day.”

Chapter V The Poor Millionaire

The impossible happened. I bought everything I wanted without money. I showed my banknote and asked for change, but every time the same thing happened. No one was able to change it.

I bought all that I needed and all the luxuries that I wanted. I stayed at an expensive hotel in Hanover Square. I always had dinner at the hotel. But I preferred having breakfast at Harris’s simple eating place. Harris’s was the first place where I had a good meal with my million-dollar note. That’s where it all started.

The news about me and my banknote was all over London.

Harris’s eating place became famous because I had breakfast there. Harris was happy with all his new customers.

I lived like a rich, important man. I had money to spend. I lived in a dream. But often, I said to myself, “Remember, this dream will end when the two men return to London. Everything will change.”

My story was in the newspapers. Everyone talked about the “strange millionaire with the million-dollar note in his pocket.” Punch magazine drew a funny picture of me on the front page. People talked about everything I did and about everything I said. They followed me in the streets.

I kept my old clothes, and sometimes I wore them. It was fun when the shop owners thought I was poor. Then I showed them the banknote, and, oh, how their faces changed!

After ten days in London, I went to visit the American Ambassador. He was very happy to meet me. He invited me to a dinner-party that evening. He told me that he knew my father from Yale University. He invited me to visit his home whenever I wanted.

I was glad to have a new, important friend. I thought to myself, “I’ll need an important friend, when the story of the million-dollar note and bet comes out.”

I want the reader to know that I planned to pay back all the shop owners who sold me things on credit. “If I win the bet for the old gentleman,” I thought, “I will have an important job. With an important job, I will have a big salary.” I planned to pay back everyone with my first year’s salary.

Chapter VI The Dinner Party

There were fourteen people at the dinner party. The Duke and Duchess of Shoreditch, and their daughter, Lady Anne-Grace-Eleanor de Bohun, the Earl and Countess of Newgate, Viscount Cheapside, Lord and Lady Blatherskite, the Ambassador and his wife and daughter, and some other people. There was also a beautiful, twenty-two-year old English girl, named Portia Langham. I fell in love with her in two minutes, and she with me!

After a while, the house servant presented another guest, Mr Lloyd Hastings. When Mr Hastings saw me, he said, "I think I know you."

"Yes, you probably do."

"Are you the – the –"

"Yes, I'm the strange millionaire with the million-dollar note in his pocket!"

"Well, well, this is a surprise. I never thought you were the same Henry Adams from San Francisco! Six months ago, you were working in the offices of Blake Hopkins in San Francisco. I remember clearly. You had a very small salary. And, at night, you helped me arrange the papers for the Gould and Curry Mining Company. Now you're a millionaire, a celebrity here in London. I can't believe it! How exciting!"

"I can't believe it, either, Lloyd."

"Just three months ago, we went to the Miner's Restaurant –"

"No, no, it was the What Cheer Restaurant."

"Right, it was the What Cheer. We went there at two o'clock in the morning. We had steak and coffee. That night we worked for six long hours on the Gould and Curry Mining Company papers. Do you remember, Henry, I asked you to come to London with me. I wanted you to help me sell the Gould and Curry gold mine shares. But you refused."

"Of course I remember. I didn't want to leave my job in San Francisco. And, I still think it's difficult to sell shares of a California gold mine here in London."

"You were right, Henry. You were so right. It is impossible to sell these shares here in London. My plan failed and I spent all my money. I don't want to talk about it."

"But you must talk about it. When we leave the dinner party, you must tell me what happened."

"Oh, can I? I really need to talk to a friend," Lloyd said, with water in his eyes.

"Yes, I want to hear the whole story, every word of it."

"Thank you, Henry. You're a true friend."

At this point, it was time for dinner. Thanks to the English system of precedence, there was no dinner.

The Duke of Shoreditch wanted to sit at the head of the table. The American Ambassador also wanted to sit at the head of the table. It was impossible for them to decide, so we had no dinner.

The English know about the system of precedence.

They have dinner before going out to dinner. But strangers know nothing about it. They remain hungry all evening.

Instead, we had a dish of sardines and a strawberry. Now it was time for everyone to play a game called cribbage. The English never play a game for fun. They play to win or to lose something.

Miss Langham and I played the game, but with little interest. I looked at her beautiful face and said, "Miss Langham, I love you!"

"Mr Adams," she said softly and smiled, "I love you too!"

This was a wonderful evening. Miss Langham and I were very happy. We smiled, laughed and talked.

I was honest with her. I told her that I was poor and that I didn't have a cent in the world. I explained that the million-dollar note was not mine. She was very curious to know more. I told her the whole story from the start. She laughed and laughed. She thought the story was very funny. I didn't understand why it was funny. I also explained that I needed an important job with a big salary to pay all my debts.

"Portia, dear, can you come with me on the day I must meet those two gentlemen?"

"Well, yes, if I can help you," she replied.

"Of course you can help me. You are so lovely that when the two gentlemen see you, I can ask for any job and any salary. With you there, my sweet Portia, the two gentlemen won't refuse me anything."

Chapter VII A Million-Dollar Idea

At the end of the dinner party, I returned to the hotel with Hastings. He talked about his problems, but I didn't listen to him. I was thinking about Portia the whole time.

When we arrived at the hotel, Hastings said, "Let me just stand here and look at this marvelous hotel. It's a palace! What expensive furniture! You have everything you want. You are rich, Henry. And I am poor."

His words scared me. I, too, was poor. I didn't have a cent in the world, and I had debts to pay. I needed to win the gentleman's bet. This was my last hope. Hastings didn't know the truth.

“Henry, just a tiny part of your income can save me. I’m desperate!” Hastings cried.

“My dear Hastings, sit down here and drink this hot whiskey. Now tell me your whole story, every word of it.”

“Do you want to hear my story again?”

“But, you never told me your story.”

“Of course I told you my story, as we walked to the hotel. Don’t you remember?”

“I didn’t hear one word of it.”

“Henry, are you ill? Is something wrong with you? What did you drink at the dinner party?”

“Oh, Hastings, I’m in love! I can only think about my sweet Portia. This is why I didn’t hear your story before.”

Hastings got up from his chair, shook my hand and laughed. “I’m very happy for you, Henry, very happy,” he said smiling. “I’ll tell you the whole story again.” So he sat down and patiently started to tell me his story.

To make a long story short, the owners of the Gould and Curry Gold Mine sent Lloyd to England, to sell the shares of the mine for one million dollars. Any money he received over one million dollars was his to keep. Hastings’s dream was to sell the shares for more than one million dollars, and become rich. He had only one month to sell the shares. He had done everything to sell them, but nobody wanted to buy them.

Then he jumped up and cried, “Henry, you can help me! Will you do it?”

“Tell me how.”

“Give me a million dollars and I’ll sell you all the shares. You will be the new owner of the gold mine. Don’t, don’t refuse.”

I did not know what to say. I wanted to tell Hastings the truth. But then, an intelligent idea came to me. I thought about it for a moment and then calmly said, “I will save you, Lloyd.”

“Then I am already saved! How can I thank you – ”

“Let me finish, Lloyd. I will save you, but not in that way. I have a better way. I know everything about that mine. I know it’s great value. You will sell the shares by using my name. You can send anyone to me, since people in London know me. I will guarantee the gold mine. In a week or two, you will sell the shares for three million dollars, by using my name. And we’ll share the money you earn. Half to you and half to me.” Lloyd was very happy and excited. He danced around the room and laughed.

“I can use your name! Your name – think of it. The rich Londoners will run to buy these shares. I’m saved! And I’ll never forget you, Henry!”

Chapter VIII Back to Portland Place

The next day, all of London talked about the shares of the California gold mine. I stayed in my hotel and said to everyone who came to me, "Yes, I know Mr Hastings. He's a very honest man. And I know the gold mine, because I lived in the California Gold Country. It is a mine of great value." People were now interested in buying the shares.

I spent every evening with Portia at the American Ambassador's house. I didn't tell her about the shares and the mine. It was a surprise. We talked about our love and our future together.

Finally, the end of the month arrived. Lots of rich Londoners bought the shares of the mine. I had a million dollars of my own in the London and County Bank. And Lloyd did too.

It was time to meet with the two old gentlemen. I dressed in my best clothes, and I went to get Portia.

Before going to Portland Place, Portia and I talked about the job and the salary.

"Portia, you are so beautiful! When the two gentlemen meet you, they will give me any job and any salary I ask for."

"Henry, please remember that if we ask for too much, we will get nothing. Then what will happen to us?"

"Don't be afraid, Portia."

When we arrived, the same servant opened the door. There were the two old gentlemen having tea. They were surprised to see Portia. I introduced her to them.

Then I said, "Gentlemen, I am ready to report to you."

"We are pleased to hear this," said one gentleman. "Now we can decide the bet that my brother Abel and I made. If you won for me, you can have any job in my power. Do you have the million-dollar note?"

"Here it is, sir," and I gave it to him.

"I won!" he shouted. "Now what do you say, Abel?"

"I say he survived, and I lost twenty thousand dollars. I can't believe it!

"I have more to tell you," I said. "But, it's a long story. I'll tell you another time. For now, look at this."

"What! A Certificate of Deposit for \$200,000. Is it yours?"

"It's mine. I earned it by using the banknote you lent me for a month."

"This is astonishing! I can't believe it."

Portia looked at me with surprise and said, "Henry, is that really your money? You didn't tell me the truth."

“No, I didn’t. But, I know you’ll forgive me.”

“Don’t be so sure! You told me a lie, Henry.”

“Dearest Portia, it was only for fun. Come, let’s go now.”

“But, wait, wait!” my gentleman said. “I want to give you the job and the salary you choose.”

“Thank you, thank you with all my heart. But I don’t want the job.”

“Henry, you didn’t thank the good gentleman in the right way. Can I do it for you?” Portia said.

“Of course you can, my dear.”

Portia walked to my gentleman, sat on his lap and kissed him on the mouth.

Then the two old gentlemen shouted and laughed. I was amazed. What was happening?

“Papa,” said Portia, “Henry doesn’t want your job. I feel very hurt.”

“Darling, is that your father?” I asked.

“Yes, he’s my stepfather, a dear man. Now do you understand why I laughed when you told me your story?”

“My dearest sir,” I said, “I want to take back what I said. There is a job that I want.”

“Tell me!”

“I want the job of son-in-law.”

“Well, well, well. But you were never a son-in-law before. Do you know how to do this job?”

“Try me, please! Try me for thirty or forty years, and if –”

“Oh, all right. Take her!”

Were Portia and I happy? There aren’t enough words in the dictionary to describe our happiness. When the Londoners heard the whole story of my adventures with the banknote, they talked of nothing else.

Portia’s father took the banknote back to the Bank of England and cashed it. Then he gave us the cancelled banknote as a wedding present. We put it in a picture frame and hung it on the wall in our new home.

And so I always say, “Yes, it’s a million-dollar banknote, but it only bought one thing in its life; the most valuable thing in the world – Portia!”

<https://americanliterature.com>



POST-READING TASK

Answer the following questions.

1. How long do you think it took Henry to reach London in the small brig?
2. What was the bet between the brothers?
3. How much money did the brothers bet?
4. Why was Henry chosen to be the subject of the bet?
5. What did Henry do first with the money?
6. What happens when Henry is first given the note?
7. Why does Henry return to the house?
8. What happens after Henry realizes he cannot return the note to the brothers?
9. What would Henry get at the end of the 30 days if he still had the note?
10. How did Miss Langham react when Henry told her the truth about the money? Why?
11. What happened to the bank note?
12. Did Henry end up a wealthy man? How do we know?

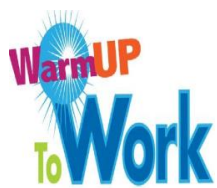


SPEAKING TASK

Discuss in small groups.

1. Do you think that story could happen in real life?
2. Do you believe the outcome of the bet would be different nowadays?
3. Are there things money can't buy?

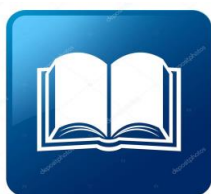
Unit 5. SHOP TILL YOU DROP



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- Have you been shopping abroad? Which are the best cities for shopping?
- Do you care where products are made? Do you prefer to buy things which are made in your own country? Why or why not?
- Some countries have late-night or all-night shopping. What time of day do you like to shop?
- What are the differences between shopping in your country and shopping in the UK?
- In the United States, the Friday after Thanksgiving is known as Black Friday and is famous for big sales and aggressive behavior by shoppers. Have you ever had any problems with other shoppers?



READING FOCUS 1

Read the text about shopping in London and then do the exercises to check your understanding.

SHOPPING SPREE IN LONDON

Napoleon Bonaparte called England a ‘nation of shopkeepers’ and even today shopping is something of a national pastime. London may be one of the most expensive cities in the world, but the unique culture of Britain, its history and traditions of fine workmanship mean that you can buy many things here that you simply won’t find anywhere else.

Along with Paris, New York, and Milan, London is a contender for the title of fashion capital of the world. Buy a new outfit here and in a season or two everyone back home will be emulating your trend-setting style.

The premier shopping district in London is the West End. Oxford Street in Soho and the surrounding streets are where you'll find clothing chains such as Top Shop, Next and Nike Town – but bigger and better than anywhere else in the country. Once you've been shopping on Oxford Street you'll understand the true meaning of 'shop till you drop'. It can be exhausting, especially at the weekends when you'll expend a massive amount of energy just elbowing your way through the crowds.

Less run-of-the-mill are London's legendary markets, selling a wide selection of fresh fruit and vegetables, meat, fish and other foods, household articles, flowers, music and cheap clothing on a specific day of the week. Farmer's markets, like Borough Market in south London, sell specialty and locally produced foods. There are flower markets like London's Columbia Road and Nine Elms, Billingsgate fish markets, as well as antiques or flea markets. Every Saturday, Portobello Market stretches for some two miles around the streets of Notting Hill, selling antiques, junk, crafts, fashion and food. You have to be up at dawn to get a bargain at the Bermondsey Square antiques market in south London – it's open from 4.00am to 1.00pm every Friday. Ask what their 'best price' is and be prepared to haggle.

When it comes to London department stores, it's not so much a matter of what to buy as what can't you buy. These massive, multi-story emporiums sell everything under the sun all under one roof. Departments typically include menswear and womenswear, technology, toys, food, homewares, shoes, handbags, accessories, gifts and more. Usually department stores stock a range of different brand products, but some also have their own product lines.

London department stores have a noble history of trading in England's capital that goes back centuries, almost all having started out as tiny, individual-run shops.

<https://www.bloomberg.com>



bargain – something on sale at a lower price than its true value.

haggle – to argue about the price of something in an attempt to make the seller reduce it.

trendsetter – a person, who starts new fashions, especially in clothes.



POST-READING TASKS

1. Read the text again paying attention to more details and complete the following statements.

1. London is a ... for the title of fashion capital of the world.
2. Buy a new ... here and in a season or two everyone back home will be emulating your ... style.
3. The premier ... in London is the West End.
4. Ask what their 'best price' is and be prepared to
5. These massive, multi-story ... sell everything under the sun all under one roof.
6. Department stores ... a range of different brand products, but some also have their own product lines.

2. Scan the text to answer the questions.

1. Where would you go in London if you want to buy a new outfit?
2. Which market sells antiques, crafts, fashion, food?
3. Do customers haggle in order to get the best price?



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. Fill in the gaps in the sentences below with the following idioms in the correct form.

to shop all over the shop the shop floor to talk shop

1. She doesn't like it when her husband's colleagues come to dinner because they All evening. She doesn't like talking about work all the time.

2. Your bedroom's such a mess! You've left your toys ... Tidy everything up at once!

3. Is your brother a manager in that car factory or does he work in one of the offices? – Neither. He works on ..., actually making the cars.

4. How did the police find out that he had stolen money? – His girlfriend ... him. She rang the police and told them!

2. Match the idioms using the word 'shop' to the definitions.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. to shop around | a. to discuss work issues in your free time |
| 2. to shop until you drop | b. to tell the police that someone has committed a crime |
| 3. to talk shop | c. to be disorganised and confused |
| 4. to go window shopping | d. to rush around and knock things over |
| 5. to shoplift | e. to buy many things (often without thinking too much about the cost) |
| 6. to shop someone | f. to look around the shops but buy nothing |
| 7. to be all over the shop | g. to go shopping until you are so tired you can't carry on |
| 8. to be like a bull in a china shop | h. to look for the best price |
| 9. to go on a shopping spree | i. to steal something from a shop |

3. Read the text below and replace the underlined phrases in the text with 'shop' idioms that you have just learnt.

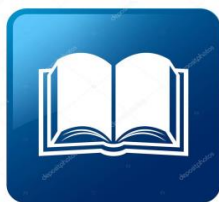
When I was at university in London, I used to love to pop into town on a Saturday afternoon and take a break from (1) **discussing work with my classmates**. Unfortunately, since I was a student and I had to be careful with my money, I usually ended up (2) **just looking**. If, on the odd occasion, I did need to buy something, I had to (3) **search for the best price** and went (4) **around in a panic to find the best deal**. I have my first job now and don't live in London anymore. When I get the chance to go back, I usually (5) **buy lots of things** and (6) **carry on shopping until I am exhausted**. It's all very exciting but I (7) **rush around and knock things over** as I try to find what I'm looking for.



BEFORE READING TASK

Before you read the article let's check some of the vocabulary to make it easier for you. How many words and expressions are you familiar with? Match the words with their definitions.

1. Goods that are bought and sold.
2. Appealing to or designed for high-income consumers.
3. A company that sells goods to the public in stores and on the internet, rather than to stores, other businesses, etc.
4. You do not have much money to spend.
5. The sale of goods in large quantities, as for resale by a retailer.



READING FOCUS 2

HARRODS – THE WORLD'S FAVOURITE DEPARTMENT STORE

Harrods is a name that most shoppers are familiar with. This London icon is a world-class store and has become a tourist attraction as well – 15 million visitors a year is the kind of number that most retailers would drool over. But Harrods isn't only for the tourist. For over 160 years, this upmarket London department store has been pampering the British upper-class with their range of luxury goods and services. For the local shopper, Harrods Food Halls are legendary and a source of glorious foods from all over the world.

The world's greatest department store was established on its current site in 1849 by Charles Henry Harrod, a wholesale grocer. Harrod's son Charles Digby rapidly grew the business and by 1880 employed 100 staff. Harrods' motto is "Everything to Everybody Everywhere".

Covering a space of more than one million square feet, Harrods is Europe's biggest department store. Its 330 departments are home to everything from clothing to cosmetics, jewelry to food. The store is well-known for its luxury and designer product offerings.

As well as merchandise, Harrods has a full range of in-store services including gift wrapping, personal shopping, price matching, home delivery, pharmacy, spas, wellness clinic, interior design, tailoring, store credit, personal stylist and more. If you need helicopter service for your time in London, Harrods can offer this and Harrods Bank can look after all your private banking needs as well.

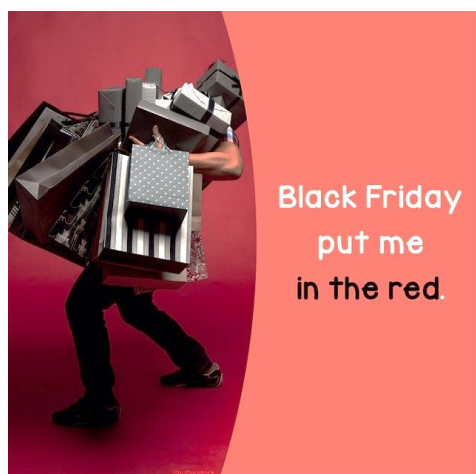
For those looking not merely to buy – but to experience – on any given day you may find opera singers performing at the top of the Egyptian Escalators or a future star serving at one of the counters. Pierce Brosnan once worked in the pharmacy and the original Darth Vader was a fitness consultant in the sports department. There are over 30 eateries in-store so you won't go hungry here.

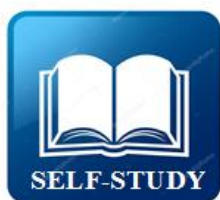
But for those who do want to shop... In these seven floors, once housing the world's first escalator, can be found 4.5 acres of... well, everything. And thanks to the 12,000 light bulbs you'll have no difficulty seeing it. Even if all you want is a humble drink of cool water, you can have a sip drawn from one of the under-the-site artesian wells.

Here you can purchase any of over 300 varieties of cheese or have a unique chocolate drink, such as an Italian 'suckao' available from the Chocolate Bar. You could even purchase your own custom-made Madame Tussaud's waxwork – for a mere £250,000. If you're on a budget, you can bid for the £20,000 24-karat gold Lindt bunny.

On the way out, since you haven't any money left, take a look at the extraordinary chandeliers or the specialized jewelry. But be sure to bring your ear plugs and elbow pads. Harrods is full not only of a million square feet of merchandise, but hordes of shoppers and visitors from all over the world.

<http://www.english-magazine.com>





READING FOCUS 3

Read the text about Black Friday shopping and then do the exercises to check your understanding.

BLACK FRIDAY – THE AMERICAN HOLIDAY OF EXTREME SHOPPING

Black Friday in New York is the biggest discount shopping day of the year. This is the time when it is common for shoppers to expect sales of up to 80% off of regular prices! Black Friday is the day after Thanksgiving Day. For many, it signals the ‘official’ start to the holiday shopping season. Every Thanksgiving, the American retail industry tries their best to lure shoppers into their stores or to go online with the hope of spending big bucks by offering the best bargains.

Since the retail industry is often operating “in the red,” not turning a profit, the name Black Friday reflects that this is the period of time when companies actually garner large earnings. Because Black Friday sales mainly involve large department stores and chains, the event has spawned a separate, related day called Small Business Saturday. This takes place on the day after Black Friday and encourages shoppers to spend some of their cash at their local businesses in the community. So, if you are in New York on Small Business Saturday, why not stop at a local boutique or neighbourhood gift shop to support the local New York businessman.

Big sales! Some amazing discounts on items from top brands clothes, Apple tablets and phones, high-definition TVs, popular toys, and much more. These products are on sale at their lowest prices of the year.

As the Thanksgiving holiday approaches, the deals begin to come out in a variety of ways. In New York, the local newspapers will carry advertisements, featuring the Black Friday bargains, as well as contain coupons that you can use for extra savings. So, with the spare change that you are carrying around in your pocket, it is worth picking up a newspaper just to check out the Black Friday shopping ads. If you can go online, you will definitely want to see the deals that the different stores are offering. The easiest way is to go directly to the store’s website in the days leading up to Thanksgiving to read what they have slashed in price for Black Friday.

<https://www.abcnews.go.com>



POST-READING TASKS

Answer the questions.

1. How do stores try to lure shoppers during Black Friday events?
2. Why is Black Friday a frustrating experience for some people?

1. According to the text, why do stores set prices so low on some items that they lose money?

- a) They want people to enjoy the holidays.
- b) They hope people will buy other gifts while they are in the store.
- c) They are in a giving mood because the holiday season is just beginning.
- d) They are trying to get rid of old items from last year to make room for new items.

2. Which is not true about Black Friday?

- a) Black Friday is always the day after Thanksgiving.
- b) Black Friday is the busiest shopping day of the year.
- c) Black Friday is a national holiday.
- d) Black Friday is the start of the holiday shopping season.

3. Where does the name Black Friday come from?

- a) The police called this day Black Friday because there is a lot of traffic.
- b) The stores called this day Black Friday because it is a serious shopping day.
- c) The police called this day Black Friday to remember the victims of violence.
- d) The stores called this day Black Friday because they make a lot of money.

4. Which best explains the main idea of the third paragraph?

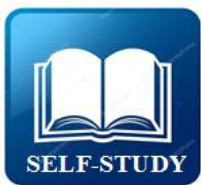
- a) People stand in long lines on Black Friday.
- b) Black Friday is the best time of the year to get good deals.
- c) Black Friday is a really disappointing time of the year.
- d) Black Friday deals are limited and not everyone will get one.

5. Which country does not participate in Black Friday?

- a) France.
- b) Costa Rica.
- c) Brazil.
- d) United Kingdom.

6. Which happened first?
- Stores tried to rename the day after Thanksgiving “Big Friday.”
 - Black Friday events began happening in Australia.
 - Police began calling the day after Thanksgiving “Black Friday.”
 - Black Friday became the busiest shopping day of the year.
7. Which title best expresses the author’s purpose in writing this text?
- Black Friday: Stories from the Parking Lot.
 - Black Friday: Why You Should Go This Year.
 - Black Friday: The Stuff That You Should Know.
 - Black Friday: How to Save Money on the Big Day.
8. Which best describes the overall structure of the fifth paragraph?
- chronological order.
 - problem and solution.
 - compare and contrast.
 - order of importance.
9. Which was not cited as one of the downsides of Black Friday?
- Stores run out of high demand items quickly.
 - Nobody really saves any money on Black Friday.
 - There are large crowds and lots of shoving.
 - Sometimes violence occurs at Black Friday events.
10. Which best explains why Costa Ricans call Black Friday “Viernes Negro”?
- Costa Rican stores don’t want the shopping day associated with American violence.
 - Viernes Negro sounds more exotic and exciting than Black Friday.
 - Costa Ricans want to establish their own shopping tradition.
 - This is how you say “Black Friday” in Spanish, the language of Costa Rica.





READING FOCUS 4

SHOPPING IN AMERICAN AND BRITISH ENGLISH

In a department store

While the term **department store** has been part of the vocabulary of both British and American English for more than a hundred years, a British speaker who goes shopping in a department store in the U.S. will almost immediately notice some differences in American and British vocabulary. For example, whereas in Britain a customer will be waited on by a **shop assistant**, in the U.S. a customer will be helped by a **sales clerk** (pronounced as if were spelled “clurk”) or a **salesperson**. And in American department stores people usually go to a **cashier** to pay for their purchases, while in Britain they pay for them at a **cash desk** or a **paying desk**. If you are planning to go shopping in an American department store, you will probably find the following expressions useful.

A **bargain basement** is an area in a department store, usually the floor below ground level, where you can buy things at reduced prices.

A **charge account** is an account that you have with a store which allows you to make your purchases with a **charge card** (a plastic card issued by the particular store) and pay for them later.

A **gift certificate** (called a **gift token** or **gift voucher** in Britain) is a gift card or document that you buy in a store as a present for someone, so they can come to the store later and exchange it for an item they want: *My sister gave me a \$50 gift certificate for my birthday!*

A **sales slip** is a somewhat old-fashioned term that some Americans still use to refer to the small piece of paper that a sales clerk gives you listing the items you have bought, but nowadays most Americans call this a **receipt**, the same term that is used in Britain.

A **sales tax** is a tax that is added to the basic price of an item you buy. In the United States, this tax is collected by local governments (city or state), and it varies a great deal (between 0.05 and 10% of the purchase price) from place to place.

Only five of the fifty states in the U.S. have no sales tax: Alaska, Delaware, Montana, New Hampshire and Oregon.

Cash or credit? If you want to buy something in an American department store, the sales clerk will probably ask, ‘**Cash or credit?**’ What this means is, ‘Do you want to pay for your purchase with cash, or do you want to charge it to a credit card?’ Depending on how you want to pay for the item, you should answer by saying something like, ‘**That’ll be cash**’ or ‘**That’ll be credit**’.

Shop or store?

The nouns **shop** and **store** are used somewhat differently in American and British English. In general, Americans use **store** the way the British use **shop** – to describe any room or building where people can buy things or pay for a service. Most British **shops** would be called **stores** in the United States, where the noun **shop** is more often used to mean a small retail establishment, such as an **antique shop** or **gift shop**. Notice in the following list how frequently Americans use the word **store** in the names for different places to shop. Notice, too, how Americans use the ending **-y**, as in **grocery**, and the British use the ending **-s**, as in **grocer's**.

American	British
bookstore	bookshop
candy store	sweet shop
fish store	fishmonger's
fruit and vegetable store	greengrocer's
grocery store	grocer's
hardware store	ironmonger's
jewelry store	jeweller's
liquor store	off-licence
newsstand	newsagent's
stationery store	stationer's

Chemist's, drugstores and pharmacies

Unlike the British, Americans don't go to **chemist's**, at least not when they need aspirin. When Americans need medicine, they go to a **drugstore** or a **pharmacy**. A **drugstore** is a store that sells medicines and other items, such as body care products, stationery, watches and cigarettes. Some **drugstores**, especially members of large American retail chains such as Rite Aide or CVS, may even have a one-hour photo processing department on the premises, where customers can have photos developed and printed. A **pharmacy**, like a **drugstore**, is a store that sells medicines and (often) other items, but it can also be part of a store, where medicines are prepared and sold.

Other places to shop

American English has some special terms to describe special shopping areas or other types of stores found in the United States. Here is a list of the most important ones:

A **convenience store** is a small store, open for long hours, that sells a variety of goods, especially food and drinks, cigarettes, newspapers and magazines.

A **discount store** or **discount house** is where Americans go when they want to save money. A **discount store** is usually large and sells goods at prices that are lower than usual. This can be for a variety of reasons. The store may employ fewer salespeople; it does not offer credit accounts; it has no delivery service; the decor, if there is any, may be very simple; the fitting rooms where customers try on clothes may be shared by several people at the same time.

A **mall** or **shopping mall** (called a **shopping centre** in Britain) is a very large building (or group of buildings) that contains a large number of stores and restaurants, sometimes a movie theater, and usually has plenty of space outside for parking: *Sarah likes to hang out at the mall with her friends.*

An **outlet** (sometimes called a **factory outlet**) is a store that sells the goods of a particular company or goods of a particular type, often at prices that are lower than usual: *The company has hundreds of outlets nationwide.*

A **shopping center** is an area where a group of different stores and businesses such as banks and restaurants are all built next to each other: *There's a little shopping center next door with a bank, a pizza shop, and a dry-cleaning place.*

A **shopping strip** (the American equivalent to what some British people call a **parade of shops**) is a group of shops and businesses that fronts onto a road or highway, and is often located outside or at the edge of a town or city.

A **variety store** is a general store, smaller than a department store, which sells a very wide range of items – everything from clothing and cameras to gardening equipment – usually at low prices.

Buying secondhand

Americans are always on the move, and for that reason it's always easy to find secondhand goods – especially household items – for sale. Here are some of the most common terms associated with this type of shopping:

A **garage sale** (sometimes called a **yard sale**) is an occasion when people sell things, often in their garage or outside their house, which they no longer want. People often advertise these kinds of sales in local newspapers or on signs they post on the streets near the place where the sale will be held.

A **rummage sale** (what the British call a **jumble sale**) is a sale of a mixed collection of things that people no longer want, especially in order to make money for an organization.

A **thrift shop** (called a **charity shop** in Britain) is a store run by a charitable organization, such as the Salvation Army, which collects and then sells items like clothes, sports equipment, or furniture that people no longer want. The money that is collected is donated to an old people's home, hospital, or some other institution.

Shopping for clothes

Speakers of American and British English call many items of clothing by exactly the same name: **blouse**, **jacket**, **shirt** and **skirt**, for example. In other cases, they use completely different words and expressions to indicate what is essentially the same item of clothing:

American

bathrobe

garters

nightgown

pantyhose

parka

sneakers

tuxedo

windbreaker

British

dressing gown

suspenders

night dress

tights

anorak

trainers

dinner jacket/suit

windcheater

Some other clothing terms are used in both varieties of English – but to describe very different sorts of things, as is the case with the following:

The word **jumper** exists in both American and British English, but whereas the British use the word **jumper** to refer to a warm piece of knitted clothing that covers the top half of the body, for Americans a jumper is a sleeveless dress that is worn over a shirt or blouse. What the British called a **jumper** is called a **sweater** by Americans.

In Britain **pants** are underwear, the things men wear underneath their **trousers**. But in America men wear **pants** over their underwear, since **pants** is the most common American word for the British term **trousers**. If you are in an American store and want to buy what the British call **pants**, you should ask for **men's shorts** or **briefs**.

For what the British mean by **vest**, Americans say **undershirt**, and for what Americans mean by **vest**, the British say **waistcoat**. Thus, an American wears a **vest** over a shirt, while an Englishman wears one underneath.

While American and British English show some differences in vocabulary related to shopping and other common activities, all evidence suggests that the two varieties of the language are moving closer together. The movement is mostly eastward. Each year, more words that were once exclusively American are found in the spoken and written language of both Britain and the U.S. For example, a generation or so ago, the use of **rain check** (a piece of paper you can use to buy something later that is not available at the moment) would immediately identify its user as an American, but today more than one store in Britain uses **rain checks** as the name for the vouchers it gives out when special offers are in short supply.

<https://www.bbc.co.uk/shopping>

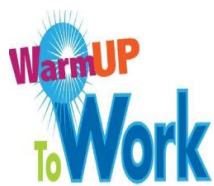


WRITING FOCUS

Write an essay about similarities and differences of shopping in the United Kingdom, the USA, and Belarus.



Unit 6. ONLINE VS TRADITIONAL SHOPPING



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

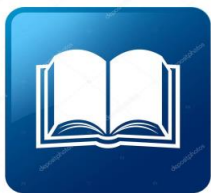
- How has the way we shop changed over the past 20 years?
- Do you often do your shopping online? Why or why not?
- What are your favorite online shopping websites?
- What items or services do you purchase online?
- What do you buy online?
- Are the prices the same as in the shops/agencies or less expensive?
- Have you ever had any disappointments or bad surprises?
- What are the advantages of shopping online?
- What are the dangers?
- How do you pay for the things you buy online?
- Discuss pros and cons for shopping online and shopping at a store or mall
- What advice would you give future online shoppers?



BEFORE READING TASK

Match the words and expressions in bold in the text with the correct definitions.

- 1) have a specific place;
- 2) sales;
- 3) giving a way to do something;
- 4) very big;
- 5) giving a cause;
- 6) aspects.



READING FOCUS 1

THE PROS AND CONS OF ONLINE SHOPPING

Everyone has noticed the **mammoth** impact technology has had on business. Although all **facets** of the business world have been effected in some way, one seems especially supportive by the public – the shopping industry. Consumers are spending more of their time... and money... without ever leaving the comfort of their own homes. Although many people still like to spend a day at the mall and prefer to see items before they buy them, online shopping has become a major player in the **retail** world with more and more people joining the ranks as Internet shoppers.

Consumers can buy almost anything via the Internet and electronic sales appear unstoppable. According to the U.S. Census Bureau, American consumers spent 32.2 billion at online retailers in the third quarter of 2019. Amazingly, that jumped just over one percent from the second quarter of 2019 and increased a **whopping** 18.9 percent from the same time period in 2018. What a difference a year makes!

Clearly, electronic shopping is becoming more and more popular. However, it isn't just about buying from a retailer. Consumers can play the role of the seller as well. One of the more popular sites allows the consumer to be the retailer is eBay.com. The online shopping website **enables** people to participate in auctions to sell items. The site was originally founded in 1995 and has become a major player in the world of online business. Although it started in San Jose, California, eBay now has **localized** websites around the world. Some countries with their own eBay sites are Canada, Malaysia, and Turkey. Consumers can buy and sell hundreds of different items like appliances, books, computers, clothing, cosmetics and even cars.

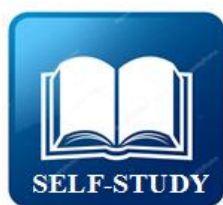
The online auction business model is successful. Other sites that have adopted this business model include Amazon.com, Overstock.com, and uBid.com. Success could be **attributed** to a variety of factors. Consumers are not constrained by time or geography. The auction lasts for days and bidders can shop any time, day or night and they can shop from anywhere in the world as long as they have access to the web and a computer.

Online shopping in general has its advantages and disadvantages. Online stores, like the auctions, are available around the clock. People can shop from home or work whereas a visit to the mall requires consumers travel via some

form of transportation and forces them to visit the stores during the stores business hours. Traditional stores aren't necessarily losing business. It's simply far more convenient to click on an item on the store's website. However, when shopping in person, the consumer can actually examine the item before they purchase. Shopping online forces the consumer to be dependent on picture and text descriptions. Online shoppers have the advantage of comparing competing stores without driving to the actual stores, but visitors to a traditional store don't face the same security and privacy concerns.

Whether it is an auction or a simple sale, whether it is an online click or a visit to a store, and whether it is full price or on sale, the online retail business world is very popular.

<https://www.forbes.com>



READING FOCUS 2

Read the short articles below and answer the following questions.

1. What is a popular choice of payment?
2. When can a check bounce?
3. Who uses electronic payments?
4. What company is an e-commerce business?
5. Why are electronic payments needed?

MODERN FORMS OF ONLINE PAYMENT

Nowadays, consumers have the opportunity to make a significant amount of purchases via the Internet. The e-shopping world doesn't lend itself to cash because consumers don't visit a store and might never meet the retailer in person. Therefore, more electronic forms of payment have been developed for the ever-going world of online shoppers. One choice is a **wire transfer** which literally transfers money from one entity's bank account into another's. If someone were to sell something on eBay and another were to buy it, the buyer can transfer funds from a bank account. The seller can watch the money appear in his or her own account and neither party leaves home. Another popular way to pay for things online is via **PayPal**. PayPal is an e-commerce business that was founded in Palo Alto,

California, in 1998. This booming business allows payments and transfers to be completed through the Internet. It's growing in popularity because buyers and sellers are not dependent on **checks, money orders, or cash**. Electronic money refers to **scrip** that is only electronic in format. Scrip is any currency substitute. Electronic Funds transfers (EFT) and direct deposits are versions of electronic money. With the advent of electronic forms of payment, paper money is becoming an antiquated form of payment.

<https://www.forbes.com>



POST-READING TASK

Work with the partner to fill in the table below. Use your dictionary if necessary.

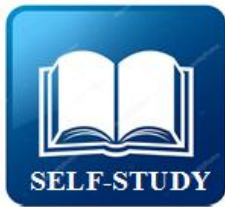
Form of payment	Definition	Example
credit card		
debit card		
money order		
electronic money		
PayPal		
wire transfer		
currency		
cash		
bills and coins		



WRITINGFOCUS

Write an essay about one of the following topics. Provide your opinion and use specific reasons and examples to support your answer.

1. Online Versus Offline Shopping: Which Is a Better Alternative?
2. An experience you have had making an online purchase.



READING FOCUS 3

BITCOIN – THE CURRENCY OF THE FUTURE

Bitcoin is an alternative type of payment system. It is a type of internet or digital money. You can use it to do business outside mainstream financial services. Bitcoin is basically digital cash. It works just like an online wallet. You can send money in your online wallet to your friends, buy stuff online and offline, or even invest in it, like you would do with stocks.

A Brief History of Bitcoin

Bitcoin is not an entirely new idea. Before Bitcoin, there were a few digital cash technologies available, but most of them needed more time to fully develop. In 2008, a paper about a peer-to-peer cash system, authored by Satoshi Nakamoto, was posted to a specialized mailing list. Some months later, in January 2009, the Bitcoin software was released. The very first supporters, who downloaded the software on the first day, received several bitcoins from the creator for free. In the first eight years of the operation, it is estimated that some 16.5 million Bitcoins were bought. As an example, in 2020 the bitcoin hit a record high of 1 bitcoin = over \$10,000 US dollars. (When it just started trading in 2010 it was 1 bitcoin = less than \$0.5 US dollars!)

Bitcoin in a Nutshell

Bitcoin was created as a response to the criticism suggesting that big banks are corrupt and not accountable, constantly misusing clients' money and charging enormous fees. The creator of Bitcoin invented something that eliminates the middleman – or, in this case, the bank – from financial exchanges. Because the Bitcoin system is decentralized, all transactions are very transparent, so there is no corruption. The clients always know what is going on and can control their own money. In brief, it is a virtual currency, and the users are free to choose among checks, wiring or cash when they want to make a transaction.

How Does Bitcoin Work?

A word often associated with Bitcoin is “blockchain”, which is where all confirmed transactions Bitcoin users make are placed as “blocks”. More specifically, whenever a “block”, or a transaction, enters the online system, its validation is needed on the peer-to-peer computer network. That means that all Bitcoin users are aware of every single block, and this makes stealing or spending the same currency twice impossible. This is one of the reasons why millions

of people trust Bitcoin and see a very bright future ahead of it. All transactions occur only between the buyer and the seller, with the help of private “keys”, or passwords, they come up with, and their electronic gadgets.

Where Is Bitcoin Used?

Even though it is only several years old, Bitcoin has permeated to businesses and households around the world. Even billion-dollar businesses like PayPal and Microsoft allow their customers to use Bitcoin to pay for services. It is also possible to buy a necklace or a ring from the REED Jewelers jewelry chain in the United States using Bitcoin. In addition, people in living in the countries with high levels of corruption find Bitcoin to be the easiest and most reliable channel for sending and receiving money.

How Can Bitcoin Be Bought?

At first, all new users must install a virtual wallet onto their electronic devices. This wallet is like an online bank account where all future transactions will be noted. Next step, Bitcoin needs some real money which will be translated into a virtual currency. This can be done through an online payment, a bank transfer or a third-party website. Once the funds are stored in the virtual wallet, the users should order bitcoins and then use them as they please. This simple process is very similar to trading stocks, for example.

Interesting Facts about Bitcoin

Rick Falkvinge, the Founder of the Swedish Pirate Party, said that “Bitcoin will do to banks what email did to the postal industry”, meaning that banks will lose most of their business thanks to this new development.

While Satoshi Nakamoto is listed as the creator of Bitcoin, it is unknown whether this is a person or a group of people. The founder(s) claim to be Japanese; however, this is also not certain.

If you lose your virtual wallet, you will lose your Bitcoins forever. Unlike in the offline world, refunds are not possible for Bitcoin transactions. One user learned this the hard way by accidentally sending \$137,000 instead of \$5 to a seller.

<https://www.forbes.com>





POST-READING TASK

1. Multiple choice. For each item below, circle the best answer.

1. What does “corruption” mean?
 - a) collaborating for a good cause;
 - b) bad behavior, usually involving taking money illegally;
 - c) disrupting an event;
2. What does “transparent” mean?
 - a) shared by several entities;
 - b) shining very brightly;
 - c) easy to detect or see through;
3. What does “permeate” mean?
 - d) spread throughout;
 - e) allow something to happen;
 - f) repeat something;
4. What does “refund” mean?
 - a) pay back;
 - b) increase someone’s salary;
 - c) pay in installments;
5. What does “accountable” mean?
 - a) possible to count;
 - b) related to a bank account;
 - c) responsible for own actions;
6. The first paper about Bitcoin was posted to the cryptography mailing ...
 - a) list
 - b) index
 - c) catalogue
7. Bitcoin is designed as a ... of exchange.
 - a) channel
 - b) medium
 - c) tool
8. The REED Jewelers is a jewelry ...
 - a) set
 - b) series
 - c) chain

9. It is essential to use electronic ... in the Bitcoin system.
 - a) gadgets
 - b) utensils
 - c) instruments
10. Bitcoin ... the third person from all exchanges.
 - a) banishes
 - b) puts an end to
 - c) eliminates
11. One user learned it the ... way by making a huge mistake.
 - a) tough
 - b) hard
 - c) forceful
12. Bitcoin transactions are almost like ... stocks.
 - a) switching
 - b) trading
 - c) swapping
13. Big banks were accused ... misusing clients' money.
 - a) of
 - b) for
 - c) about
14. Bitcoin is the first ... cryptocurrency.
 - a) scattered
 - b) segregated
 - c) decentralized
15. Cryptocurrencies can verify the ... of assets.
 - a) transport
 - b) resettlement
 - c) transfer

2. Answer the questions, circle the best answer.

1. What inspired the creation of Bitcoin?
 - a) corrupt politicians
 - b) corruption in Microsoft
 - c) corrupt banks
2. Where can you find your Bitcoins if you lose your virtual wallet?
 - a) nowhere
 - b) in the Lost and Found section
 - c) online

3. Why does Rick Falkvinge think Bitcoin will seriously damage banks?
 - a) because it will hack the bank software
 - b) because it will make them obsolete
 - c) because all bankers will want to work for Bitcoin
4. Where is the virtual wallet located?
 - a) in the user's pocket
 - b) in the user's safe
 - c) on the user's phone, tablet or laptop
5. How is stealing money prevented in the Bitcoin system?
 - a) all users can see all transactions
 - b) there are numerous passwords
 - c) there is video surveillance

3. Based on the information in this article, which statement is true?

1. If you buy something with Bitcoin and you don't like it, you can return it and get your money back.
2. Once you have purchased something with Bitcoin, you can't get your money back.
3. Only small business trust Bitcoin.
4. Big business also trust Bitcoin.

4. Based on the information in this article, are the following statements true or false?

1. "You need to have real money before you can purchase Bitcoins."
 - a) true
 - b) false
2. "We know for a fact that the Bitcoin creator is Japanese."
 - a) true
 - b) false





READING FOCUS 4

CONSUMER RIGHTS WHEN BUYING GOODS IN THE UK

Many countries have legislation in place to protect the rights of consumers. In the United Kingdom they are protected by laws such as the Sale of Goods Act, the Supply of Goods and Services Act, the Distance Selling Regulations, the Consumer Protection Act and the Consumer Credit Act.

Below you will see a summary of some of the key points from these laws, and some other information which consumers might find useful. Complete the paragraphs with the following words and expressions.

accurate description	as described	claim for compensation
cooling-off period	credit card fraud	credit voucher
delivery arrangements	defective	fit for intended purpose
give a refund	opt out of	guarantee or warranty
poor workmanship	proof of purchase	reasonable care and skill
reasonable charge	receipt	satisfactory quality
specified period	unsolicited mail	written confirmation
unsolicited telemarketing	wear and tear	within a reasonable time
responsibilities and liabilities		

1. Providers of goods and services (including credit providers and hire companies) all have ... towards the customer which are aimed at protecting the customer and his / her rights.

2. When you buy goods, they must be of ...: the condition they are in should match your expectations based on the price you paid. They should also be '...' (in other words, they must match the description made by the provider and / or the manufacturer), and they must be '...' (they should do what you expect them to do).

3. All goods must carry a ... in case they go wrong or do not meet your expectations.

4. If you need to return goods to a shop or other supplier, you should do so ... : many shops and suppliers specify their own limit, usually 28 days, and can refuse to do anything if there is evidence of unreasonable ... (signs that the goods have been used more than is normal or for a purpose for which they were not designed).

5. If you take goods back to a shop, they are entitled to ask for ..., such as a ..., a credit card slip, etc., that shows you actually bought the goods from them.

6. Many shops may refuse (illegally, if the product you have bought is faulty or ...) to ..., and instead of returning your money will offer you a ... to use in that shop at a later date.

7. Where certain goods or services are ordered on the Internet, on-line shops should offer their customers a ... after they have ordered them, in case the customer decides to suddenly cancel their order.

8. On-line (Internet) shops should give the customer an ... of the goods being sold, and clearly state the price, ... and options (how and when the customer can expect to receive their goods, whether there is an extra charge for postage, etc.

9. On-line shops should also protect customers against ..., and should allow customers to ... receiving further information and ..., ...or unsolicited emails. They should also send the customer ... of their order (often in the form of an email sent after the order has been placed).

10. If a service is being provided (for example, a mobile phone contract), and there is a ... for the contract, this must be clearly stated by the provider.

11. If you buy faulty goods with a credit card, and those goods cost between £100 and £300, you have an equal ... against the seller of the goods and the credit card company.

12. Where a service such as the repair of a car is being provided, it should be done with ... (an unsatisfactory standard of work or general ... should not be accepted by the customer) for a ... (the customer should not have to pay an excessive amount of money) and within a reasonable time.

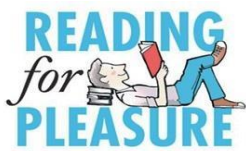
<https://www.english-magazine.com>



**THE MOST PRECIOUS THINGS IN LIFE
ARE NOT THOSE YOU GET FOR MONEY**



Albert Einstein



READING FOR PLEASURE

CHEAP AT HALF THE PRICE

By Jeffrey Archer

Once she was back on familiar territory, she began to work her way steadily down the other side of the street, stopping at Bentley's, where it appeared that they hadn't sold anything since last year, and moving rapidly on to Adler, who seemed to be suffering from much the same problem. She cursed the recession once again, and blamed it all on Bill Clinton, who Victor had assured her was the cause of most of the world's current problems.

Consuela was beginning to despair of finding anything worthwhile in Bond Street, and reluctantly began her journey back toward the Ritz, feeling she might even have to consider an expedition to Knightsbridge the following day, when she came to a sudden halt outside the House of Graff. Consuela could not recall the shop from her last visit to London some six months before, and as she knew Bond Street better than she had ever known any of her three husbands, she concluded that it must be a new establishment.

She gazed at the stunning gems in their magnificent settings, heavily protected behind the bulletproof windows. When she reached the third window her mouth opened wide, like a newborn chick demanding to be fed. From that moment she knew that no further excursions would be necessary, for there, hanging around a slender marble neck, was a peerless diamond-and-ruby necklace. She felt that she had seen the magnificent piece of jewelry somewhere before, but she quickly dismissed the thought from her mind and continued to study the exquisitely set rubies surrounded by perfectly cut diamonds, making up a necklace of unparalleled beauty. Without giving a moment's thought to how much the object might cost, Consuela walked slowly toward the thick glass door at the entrance to the shop, and pressed a discreet ivory button on the wall. The House of Graff obviously had no interest in passing trade.

The door was unlocked by a security officer who needed no more than a glance at Mrs. Rosenheim to know that he should usher her quickly through to the inner portals, where a second door was opened and Consuela came face to face with a tall, imposing man in a long black coat and pinstriped trousers. "Good afternoon, madam," he said, bowing slightly. Consuela noticed that he surreptitiously admired her rings as he did so. "Can I be of assistance?"

Although the room was full of treasures that might in normal circumstances have deserved hours of her attention, Consuela's mind was focused on only one object. "Yes. I would like to study more closely the diamond-and-ruby necklace on display in the third window." "Certainly, madam," the manager replied, pulling out a chair for his customer. He nodded almost imperceptibly to an assistant, who silently walked over to the window, unlocked a little door, and extracted the necklace. The manager slipped behind the counter and pressed a concealed button. Four floors above, a slight burr sounded in the private office of Mr. Laurence Graff, warning the proprietor that a customer had inquired about a particularly expensive item, and that he might wish to deal with them personally.

Laurence Graff glanced up at the television screen on the wall to his left, which showed him what was taking place on the ground floor. "Ah," he said, once he saw the lady in the pink suit seated at the Louis XIV table. "Mrs. Consuela Rosenheim, if I am not mistaken." Just as the Speaker of the House of Commons can identify every one of its 650 members, so Laurence Graff recognized the 650 customers who might be able to afford the most extravagant of his treasures. He quickly stepped from behind his desk, walked out of his office, and took the waiting elevator to the ground floor.

Meanwhile, the manager had laid out a black velvet cloth on the table in front of Mrs. Rosenheim, and the assistant placed the necklace delicately on top of it. Consuela stared down at the object of her desire, mesmerized.

"Good afternoon, Mrs. Rosenheim," said Laurence Graff as he stepped out of the elevator and walked across the thick pile carpet toward his would-be customer. "How nice to see you again."

He had in truth only seen her once before – at a shoulder-to-shoulder cocktail party in Manhattan. But after that, he could have spotted her at a hundred paces on a moving escalator. "Good afternoon, Mr..." Consuela hesitated, feeling unsure of herself for the first time that day. "Laurence Graff," he said, offering his hand. "We met at Sotheby-Parke Bernet last year – a charity function in aid of the Red Cross, if I remember correctly."

"Of course," said Mrs. Rosenheim, unable to recall him, or the occasion.

Mr. Graff bowed reverently toward the diamond-and-ruby necklace.

"The Kanemarra heirloom¹," he purred, then paused, before taking the manager's place at the table. "Fashioned in 1936 by Silvio di Larchi," he continued. "All the rubies were extracted from a single mine in Burma, over a period of twenty years. The diamonds were purchased from De Beers by an Egyptian merchant who,

¹a valuable object that has been given by older members of a family to younger members of the same family over many years

after the necklace had been made for him, offered the unique piece to King Farouk – for services rendered. When the monarch married Princess Farida, he presented it to her on their wedding day, and she in return bore him four heirs, none of whom, alas, was destined to succeed to the throne.” Graff looked up from one object of beauty and gazed on another. “Since then it has passed through several hands before arriving at the House of Graff,” continued the proprietor. “Its most recent owner was an actress, whose husband’s oil wells unfortunately dried up.”

The flicker of a smile crossed the face of Consuela Rosenheim as she finally recalled where she had previously seen the necklace.

“Quite magnificent,” she said, giving it one final look. “I will be back,” she added as she rose from her chair. Graff accompanied her to the door. Nine out of ten customers who make such a claim have no intention of returning, but he could always sense the tenth. “May I ask the price?” Consuela asked indifferently as he held the door open for her. “One million pounds, madam,” Graff replied, as casually as if she had inquired about the cost of a plastic key ring at a seaside gift shop.

Once she had reached the sidewalk, Consuela dismissed her chauffeur. Her mind was now working at a speed that would have impressed her husband. She slipped across the street, calling first at the White House, then Yves Saint-Laurent, and finally at Chanel, emerging some two hours later with all the weapons she required for the battle that lay ahead. She did not arrive back at her suite at the Ritz until a few minutes before six.

Consuela was relieved to find that her husband had not yet returned from the bank. She used the time to take a long bath, and to contemplate how the trap should be set. Once she was dry and powdered, she dabbed a suggestion of a new scent on her throat, then slipped into some of her newly acquired clothes.

She was checking herself once again in the full-length mirror when Victor entered the room.

He stopped on the spot, dropping his briefcase on the carpet. Consuela turned to face him.

“You look stunning,” he declared, with the same look of desire she had lavished on the Kanemarra heirloom a few hours before.

“Thank you, darling,” she replied. “And how did your day go?”

“A triumph. The takeover has been agreed, and at half the price it would have cost me only a year ago.”

Consuela smiled. An unexpected bonus.

“Those of us who are still in possession of cash need have no fear of the recession,”

Victor added with satisfaction.

Over a quiet supper in the Ritz's dining room , Victor described to his wife in great detail what had taken place at the bank that day. During the occasional break in this monologue Consuela indulged her husband by remarking, "How clever of you, Victor," "How amazing," "How you managed it I will never understand." When he finally ordered a large brandy, lit a cigar, and leaned back in his chair, she began to run her elegantly stockinged right foot gently along the inside of his thigh. For the first time that evening, Victor stopped thinking about the takeover.

As they left the dining room and strolled toward the elevator, Victor placed an arm around his wife's slim waist. By the time the elevator had reached the sixth floor he had already taken off his jacket, and his hand had slipped a few inches further down.

Consuela giggled. Long before they had reached the door of their suite, he had begun tugging off his tie.

When they entered the room, Consuela placed the Do Not Disturb sign on the outside doorknob. For the next few minutes Victor was transfixed to the spot as he watched his slim wife slowly remove each garment she had purchased that afternoon. He quickly pulled off his own clothes, and wished once again that he had carried out his New Year's resolution.

Forty minutes later, Victor lay exhausted on the bed. After a few moments of sighing, he began to snore. Consuela pulled the sheet over their naked bodies, but her eyes remained wide open. She was already going over the next step in her plan.

Victor awoke the following morning to discover his wife's hand gently stroking the inside of his leg. He rolled over to face her, the memory of the previous night still vivid in his mind. They made love a second time, something they had not done for as long as he could recall. It was not until he stepped out of the shower that Victor remembered that it was his wife's birthday, and that he had promised to spend the morning with her selecting a gift. He only hoped that her eye had already settled on something she wanted, as he needed to spend most of the day closeted in the City with his lawyers, going over the offer document line by line.

"Happy birthday, darling," he said as he padded back into the bedroom. "By the way, did you have any luck finding a present?" he added as he scanned the front page of the Financial

Times, which was already speculating on the possible takeover, describing it as a coup. A smile of satisfaction appeared on Victor's face for the second time that morning.

“Yes, my darling,” Consuela replied. “I did come across one little bauble that I rather liked. I just hope it isn’t too expensive.”

“And how much is this ‘little bauble’?” Victor asked. Consuela turned to face him. She was wearing only two garments, both of them black, and both of them remarkably skimpy.

Victor started to wonder if he still had the time, but then he remembered the lawyers, who had been up all night and would be waiting patiently for him at the bank.

“I didn’t ask the price,” Consuela replied. “You’re so much cleverer than I am at that sort of thing,” she added, as she slipped into a navy silk blouse. Victor glanced at his watch. “How far away is it?” he asked.

“Just across the road, in Bond Street, my darling,” Consuela replied. “I shouldn’t have to delay you for too long.” She knew exactly what was going through her husband’s mind.

“Good. Then let’s go and look at this little bauble without delay,” he said as he buttoned his shirt.

While Victor finished dressing, Consuela, with the help of the Financial Times, skillfully guided the conversation back to his triumph of the previous day. She listened once more to the details of the takeover as they left the hotel and strolled up Bond Street together arm in arm.

“Probably saved myself several million,” he told her yet again. Consuela smiled as she led him to the door of the House of Graff.

“Several million?” she gasped. “How clever you are, Victor.”

The security guard quickly opened the door, and this time Consuela found that Mr. Graff was already standing by the table waiting for her. He bowed low, then turned to Victor. “May I offer my congratulations on your brilliant coup, Mr. Rosenheim.” Victor smiled. “How may I help you?”

“My husband would like to see the Kanemarra heirloom,” said Consuela, before Victor had a chance to reply. “Of course, madam,” said the proprietor. He stepped behind the table and spread out the black velvet cloth. Once again the assistant removed the magnificent necklace from its stand in the third window, and carefully laid it out on the center of the velvet cloth to show the jewels to their best advantage. Mr. Graff was about to embark on the piece’s history, when Victor simply said, “How much is it?”

Mr. Graff raised his head. “This is no ordinary piece of jewelry. I feel...” “How much?” repeated Victor.

“It’s provenance alone warrants...”

“How much?”

“The sheer beauty, not to mention the craftsmanship involved...”

"How much?" asked Victor, his voice now rising.

"The word 'unique' would not be inappropriate."

"You may be right, but I still need to know how much it's going to cost me," said Victor, who was beginning to sound exasperated.

"One million pounds, sir," Graff said in an even tone, aware that he could not risk another Superlative.

"I'll settle at half a million, no more," came back the immediate reply.

"I am sorry to say, sir," said Graff, "that with this particular piece, there is no room for bargaining."

"There's always room for bargaining, whatever one is selling," said Victor. "I repeat my offer. Half a million."

"I fear that in this case, sir..."

"I feel confident that you'll see things my way, given time," said Victor. "But I don't have that much time to spare this morning, so I'll write out a check for half a million, and leave you to decide whether you wish to cash it or not."

"I fear you are wasting your time, sir," said Graff. "I cannot let the Kanemarra heirloom go for less than one million." Victor took a checkbook from his inside pocket, unscrewed the top of his fountain pen, and wrote out the words "Five hundred thousand pounds only" below the name of the bank that bore his name. His wife took a discreet pace backward.

Graff was about to repeat his previous comment when he glanced up and observed Mrs. Rosenheim silently pleading with him to accept the check.

A look of curiosity came over his face as Consuela continued her urgent mime. Victor tore out the check and left it on the table. "I'll give you twenty-four hours to decide," he said. "We return to New York tomorrow morning – with or without the Kanemarra heirloom. It's your decision."

Graff left the check on the table as he accompanied Mr. and Mrs. Rosenheim to the front door and bowed them out onto Bond Street.

"You were brilliant, my darling," said Consuela as the chauffeur opened the car door for his master.

"The bank," Rosenheim instructed as he fell into the back seat. "You'll have your little bauble, Consuela. He'll cash the check before the twenty-four hours are up, of that I'm sure."

The chauffeur closed the back door, and the window purred down as Victor added with a smile, "Happy birthday, darling."

Consuela returned his smile, and blew him a kiss as the car pulled out into the traffic and edged its way toward Piccadilly. The morning had not turned out quite as she had planned, because she felt unable to agree with her husband's judgment – but then, she still had twenty-four hours to play with.

Consuela returned to the suite at the Ritz, undressed, took a shower, opened another bottle of perfume, and slowly began to change into the second outfit she had purchased the previous day. Before she left the room she turned to the commodities section of the Financial Times, and checked the price of green coffee.

She emerged from the Arlington Street entrance of the Ritz wearing a double-breasted navy blue Yves Saint-Laurent suit and a wide-brimmed red-and-white hat. Ignoring her chauffeur, she hailed a taxi, instructing the driver to take her to a small, discreet hotel in Knightsbridge. Fifteen minutes later she entered the foyer with her head bowed and, after giving the name of her host to the manager, was accompanied to a suite on the fourth floor.

Her luncheon companion stood as she entered the room, walked forward, kissed her on both cheeks, and wished her a happy birthday.

After an intimate lunch, and an even more intimate hour spent in the adjoining room, Consuela's companion listened to her request and, having first checked his watch, agreed to accompany her to Mayfair. He didn't mention to her that he would have to be back in his office by four o'clock to take an important call from South America. Since the downfall of the Brazilian president, coffee prices had gone through the roof.

As the car traveled down Brompton Road, Consuela's companion telephoned to check the latest spot price of green coffee in New York (only her skill in bed had managed to stop him from calling earlier). He was pleased to learn that it was up another two cents, but not as pleased as she was. Eleven minutes later, the car deposited them outside the House of Graff.

When they entered the shop together arm in arm, Mr. Graff didn't so much as raise an eyebrow.

"Good afternoon, Mr. Carvalho," he said. "I do hope that your estates yielded an abundant crop this year."

Mr. Carvalho smiled and replied, "I cannot complain."

"And how may I assist you?" inquired the proprietor.

"We would like to see the diamond necklace in the third window," said Consuela, without a moment's hesitation.

"Of course, madam," said Graff, as if he were addressing a complete stranger.

Once again the black velvet cloth was laid out on the table, and once again the assistant placed the Kanemarra heirloom in its centre.

This time Mr. Graff was allowed to relate its history before Carvalho politely inquired after the price.

"One million pounds," said Graff.

After a moment's hesitation, Carvalho said, "I'm willing to pay half a million."

"This is no ordinary piece of jewelry," replied the proprietor. "I feel. . ."

"Possibly not, but half a million is my best offer," said Carvalho.

"The sheer beauty, not to mention the craftsmanship involved. . ."

"Nevertheless, I am not willing to go above half a million."

"The word 'unique' would not be inappropriate."

"Half a million, and no more," insisted Carvalho. "I am sorry to say, sir," said Graff, "that with this particular piece there is no room for bargaining."

"There's always room for bargaining, whatever one is selling," the coffee grower insisted.

"I fear that is not true in this case, sir. You see. . ."

"I suspect you will come to your senses in time," said Carvalho. "But, regrettably, I do not have any time to spare this afternoon. I will write out a check for half a million pounds, and leave you to decide whether you wish to cash it."

Carvalho took a checkbook from his inside pocket, unscrewed the top of his fountain pen, and wrote out the words "Five hundred thousand pounds only." Consuela looked on silently.

Carvalho tore out the check and left it on the counter.

"I'll give you twenty-four hours to decide. I leave for Chicago on the early evening flight tomorrow. If the check has not been presented by the time I reach my office. . ."

Graff bowed his head slightly, and left the check on the table. He accompanied them to the door and bowed again when they stepped out onto the sidewalk.

"You were brilliant, my darling," said Consuela as the chauffeur opened the car door for his employer.

"The Exchange," said Carvalho. Turning back to face his mistress, he added, "You'll have your necklace before the day is out, of that I'm certain, my darling." Consuela smiled and waved as the car disappeared in the direction of Piccadilly, and on this occasion she felt able to agree with her lover's judgment. Once the car had turned the corner, she slipped back into the House of Graff. The proprietor smiled and handed over the smartly wrapped gift. He bowed low and simply said, "Happy birthday, Mrs. Rosenheim."

The Collected Short Stories by J. Archer

HE SOFT SELL

By Art Buchwald

One of the problems with today's economy is that it's very hard to find young people who are good salesmen. Many students coming out of college are more interested in a customer's motivation than they are in closing a sale. They also have a tendency to be too honest, which can play havoc in the retail business.

A friend of mine has a dress shop here in Georgetown, and she told me of the problems she had with a young lady, a psychology major, whom she hired as a salesgirl. This, in essence, is what happened:

The first day a lady came in the store, and the salesgirl (let us call her Miss Brampton) asked if she could be of help.

"I'd like a suit for the fall," the lady said.

"What price range?" Miss Brampton asked.

"It doesn't make any difference," the lady replied.

"Well, let me ask you this question: Do you want the suit because you need it? Or have you just had a fight with your husband, and are trying to get even by making a very expensive purchase?"

"I beg your pardon?" the lady said.

"Perhaps you suspect him of some infidelity, and you think this is the only way you can get back at him."

"I have no idea what you're talking about," the customer said.

"Spending money in anger is a very expensive form of hostility. My advice to you is to think it over for a few days. Try to patch up your differences. Buying a new suit won't save your marriage."

"Thank you very much," the customer said frostily and left the store.

"She's angry with me now," Miss Brampton told the dress shop owner, "but in a week she'll be grateful I talked her out of it."

My friend the shop proprietor decided to let the incident pass; but that afternoon another customer came in, and Miss Brampton asked if she could be of help.

The lady said, "I need something really exciting. I'm going to the Kennedy Center, and I want a dress that will knock everyone dead."

Miss Brampton said, "We have some lovely evening dresses over here for insecure people."

"Insecure people?"

"Oh, yes. Didn't you know that clothes are one of the main ways women compensate for insecurity?"

"I'm not insecure," the lady said angrily.

"Then why do you want to knock them dead at the Kennedy Center? Why can't you be accepted for yourself instead of what you wear? You are a very attractive person, and you have an inner beauty you try to disguise. I can sell you a new dress that will attract attention, but then you would never know if it were you or the dress that made people stop and stare."

By this time, the dress shop owner decided to step in.

“Miss Brampton, if the lady wants an evening dress, let her see our evening dresses.”

“No,” the customer said. “Your girl is right. Why spend \$500 to get a few compliments from people who really don’t care what I wear? Thank you for helping me, young lady. It’s true I’ve been insecure all these years and didn’t even know it.”

The customer walked out of the store.

The final straw for the dress store owner took place an hour later when a coed came in to buy a short skirt, and Miss Brampton gave her 30 minutes on Women’s lib and then said, “All you do when you buy a short skirt is become a sex object.”

That night the dress shop owner put a sign in the window: help wanted – no psychology majors need apply.

Beating Around the Bush by A. Buchwald

THE GIFT OF THE MAGI

By O. Henry

One dollar and eighty-seven cents. That was all. And sixty cents of it was in pennies. Pennies saved one and two at a time by bulldozing the grocer and the vegetable man and the butcher until one’s cheeks burned with the silent imputation of parsimony that such close dealing implied. Three times Della counted it. One dollar and eighty-seven cents. And the next day would be Christmas.

There was clearly nothing to do but flop down on the shabby little couch and howl. So Della did it. Which instigates the moral reflection that life is made up of sobs, sniffles, and smiles, with sniffles predominating.

While the mistress of the home is gradually subsiding from the first stage to the second, take a look at the home. A furnished flat at \$8 per week. It did not exactly beggar description, but it certainly had that word on the lookout for the mendicancy squad.

In the vestibule below was a letter-box into which no letter would go, and an electric button from which no mortal finger could coax a ring. Also appertaining thereunto was a card bearing the name “Mr. James Dillingham Young.”

The “Dillingham” had been flung to the breeze during a former period of prosperity when its possessor was being paid \$30 per week. Now, when the income was shrunk to \$20, though, they were thinking seriously of contracting to a modest and unassuming D. But whenever Mr. James Dillingham Young came home and reached his flat above he was called “Jim” and greatly hugged by Mrs. James Dillingham Young, already introduced to you as Della. Which is all very good.

Della finished her cry and attended to her cheeks with the powder rag. She stood by the window and looked out dully at a gray cat walking a gray fence in a gray backyard. Tomorrow would be Christmas Day, and she had only \$1.87 with which to buy Jim a present. She had been saving every penny she could for months, with this result. Twenty dollars a week doesn't go far. Expenses had been greater than she had calculated. They always are. Only \$1.87 to buy a present for Jim. Her Jim. Many a happy hour she had spent planning for something nice for him. Something fine and rare and sterling – something just a little bit near to being worthy of the honor of being owned by Jim.

There was a pier-glass between the windows of the room. Perhaps you have seen a pier-glass in an \$8 flat. A very thin and very agile person may, by observing his reflection in a rapid sequence of longitudinal strips, obtain a fairly accurate conception of his looks. Della, being slender, had mastered the art.

Suddenly she whirled from the window and stood before the glass. Her eyes were shining brilliantly, but her face had lost its color within twenty seconds. Rapidly she pulled down her hair and let it fall to its full length.

Now, there were two possessions of the James Dillingham Youngs in which they both took a mighty pride. One was Jim's gold watch that had been his father's and his grandfather's. The other was Della's hair. Had the queen of Sheba lived in the flat across the airshaft, Della would have let her hair hang out the window someday to dry just to depreciate Her Majesty's jewels and gifts. Had King Solomon been the janitor, with all his treasures piled up in the basement, Jim would have pulled out his watch every time he passed, just to see him pluck at his beard from envy.

So now Della's beautiful hair fell about her rippling and shining like a cascade of brown waters. It reached below her knee and made itself almost a garment for her. And then she did it up again nervously and quickly. Once she faltered for a minute and stood still while a tear or two splashed on the worn red carpet.

On went her old brown jacket; on went her old brown hat. With a whirl of skirts and with the brilliant sparkle still in her eyes, she fluttered out the door and down the stairs to the street.

Where she stopped the sign read: "Madame Sofronie. Hair Goods of All Kinds." One flight up Della ran, and collected herself, panting. Madame, large, too white, chilly, hardly looked the "Sofronie."

"Will you buy my hair?" asked Della.

"I buy hair," said Madame. "Take your hat off and let's have a sight at the looks of it."

Down rippled the brown cascade.

"Twenty dollars," said Madame, lifting the mass with a practiced hand.

“Give it to me quick,” said Della.

Oh, and the next two hours tripped by on rosy wings. Forget the hashed metaphor. She was ransacking the stores for Jim’s present.

She found it at last. It surely had been made for Jim and no one else. There was no other like it in any of the stores, and she had turned all of them inside out. It was a platinum fob chain simple and chaste in design, properly proclaiming its value by substance alone and not by meretricious ornamentation – as all good things should do. It was even worthy of The Watch. As soon as she saw it she knew that it must be Jim’s. It was like him. Quietness and value – the description applied to both. Twenty-one dollars they took from her for it, and she hurried home with the 87 cents. With that chain on his watch Jim might be properly anxious about the time in any company. Grand as the watch was, he sometimes looked at it on the sly on account of the old leather strap that he used in place of a chain.

When Della reached home her intoxication gave way a little to prudence and reason. She got out her curling irons and lighted the gas and went to work repairing the ravages made by generosity added to love. Which is always a tremendous task, dear friends – a mammoth task.

Within forty minutes her head was covered with tiny, close-lying curls that made her look wonderfully like a truant schoolboy. She looked at her reflection in the mirror long, carefully, and critically.

“If Jim doesn’t kill me,” she said to herself, “before he takes a second look at me, he’ll say I look like a Coney Island chorus girl. But what could I do – oh! what could I do with a dollar and eighty seven cents?”

At 7 o’clock the coffee was made and the frying-pan was on the back of the stove hot and ready to cook the chops.

Jim was never late. Della doubled the fob chain in her hand and sat on the corner of the table near the door that he always entered. Then she heard his step on the stair away down on the first flight, and she turned white for just a moment. She had a habit for saying little silent prayer about the simplest everyday things, and now she whispered: “Please God, make him think I am still pretty.”

The door opened and Jim stepped in and closed it. He looked thin and very serious. Poor fellow, he was only twenty-two – and to be burdened with a family! He needed a new overcoat and he was without gloves.

Jim stopped inside the door, as immovable as a setter at the scent of quail. His eyes were fixed upon Della, and there was an expression in them that she could not read, and it terrified her. It was not anger, nor surprise, nor disapproval, nor horror, nor any of the sentiments that she had been prepared for. He simply stared at her fixedly with that peculiar expression on his face.

Della wriggled off the table and went for him.

“Jim, darling,” she cried, “don’t look at me that way. I had my hair cut off and sold because I couldn’t have lived through Christmas without giving you a present. It’ll grow out again – you won’t mind, will you? I just had to do it. My hair grows awfully fast. Say ‘Merry Christmas!’ Jim, and let’s be happy. You don’t know what a nice – what a beautiful, nice gift I’ve got for you.”

“You’ve cut off your hair?” asked Jim, laboriously, as if he had not arrived at that patent fact yet even after the hardest mental labor.

“Cut it off and sold it,” said Della. “Don’t you like me just as well, anyhow? I’m me without my hair, ain’t I?”

Jim looked about the room curiously. “You say your hair is gone?” he said, with an air almost of idiocy.

“You needn’t look for it,” said Della. “It’s sold, I tell you – sold and gone, too. It’s Christmas Eve, boy. Be good to me, for it went for you. Maybe the hairs of my head were numbered,” she went on with sudden serious sweetness, “but nobody could ever count my love for you. Shall I put the chops on, Jim?”

Out of his trance Jim seemed quickly to wake. He enfolded his Della. For ten seconds let us regard with discreet scrutiny some inconsequential object in the other direction. Eight dollars a week or a million a year – what is the difference? A mathematician or a wit would give you the wrong answer. The magi brought valuable gifts, but that was not among them. This dark assertion will be illuminated later on.

Jim drew a package from his overcoat pocket and threw it upon the table.

“Don’t make any mistake, Dell,” he said, “about me. I don’t think there’s anything in the way of a haircut or a shave or a shampoo that could make me like my girl any less. But if you’ll unwrap that package you may see why you had me going a while at first.”

White fingers and nimble tore at the string and paper. And then an ecstatic scream of joy; and then, alas! a quick feminine change to hysterical tears and wails, necessitating the immediate employment of all the comforting powers of the lord of the flat.

For there lay The Combs – the set of combs, side and back, that Della had worshipped long in a Broadway window. Beautiful combs, pure tortoise shell, with jeweled rims – just the shade to wear in the beautiful vanished hair. They were expensive combs, she knew, and her heart had simply craved and yearned over them without the least hope of possession. And now, they were hers, but the tresses that should have adorned the coveted adornments were gone.

But she hugged them to her bosom, and at length she was able to look up with dim eyes and a smile and say: “My hair grows so fast, Jim!”

And then Della leaped up like a little singed cat and cried, "Oh, oh!"

Jim had not yet seen his beautiful present. She held it out to him eagerly upon her open palm. The dull precious metal seemed to flash with a reflection of her bright and ardent spirit.

"Isn't it a dandy, Jim? I hunted all over town to find it. You'll have to look at the time a hundred times a day now. Give me your watch. I want to see how it looks on it."

Instead of obeying, Jim tumbled down on the couch and put his hands under the back of his head and smiled.

"Dell," said he, "let's put our Christmas presents away and keep them a while. They're too nice to use just at present. I sold the watch to get the money to buy your combs. And now suppose you put the chops on."

The magi, as you know, were wise men – wonderfully wise men – who brought gifts to the Babe in the manger. They invented the art of giving Christmas presents. Being wise, their gifts were no doubt wise ones, possibly bearing the privilege of exchange in case of duplication. And here I have lamely related to you the uneventful chronicle of two foolish children in a flat who most unwisely sacrificed for each other the greatest treasures of their house. But in a last word to the wise of these days let it be said that of all who give gifts these two were the wisest. Of all who give and receive gifts, such as they are wisest. Everywhere they are wisest. They are the magi.

Collected stories by O. Henry

MONEY IDIOMS

A few years ago my friend Al won the lottery. It was a **windfall**. It changed his life. He did not have a rich family. He was not **born with a silver spoon in his mouth**. Instead, my friend was always **hard up** for cash. He did not have much money. And the money he did earn was **chicken feed** – very little.

Sometimes Al even had to accept **hand-outs**, gifts from his family and friends. But do not get me wrong. My friend was not a **deadbeat**. He was not the kind of person who never paid the money he owed. He simply **pinched pennies**. He was always very careful with the money he spent. In fact, he was often a **cheapskate**. He did not like to spend money. The worst times were when he was **flat broke** and had no money at all.

One day, Al **scraped together** a few dollars for a lottery ticket. He thought he would never **strike it rich** or gain lots of money unexpectedly. But his combination of numbers was chosen and he won the lottery. He **hit the jackpot**. He won a great deal of money.

Al was so excited. The first thing he did was buy a costly new car. He **splurged** on the one thing that he normally would not buy. Then he started spending money on unnecessary things. He started to waste it. It was like he had **money to burn**. He had more money than he needed and it was **burning a hole in his pocket** so he spent it quickly.

When we got together for a meal at a restaurant, Al paid every time. He would always **foot the bill**, and **pick up the tab**. He told me the money made him **feel like a million dollars**. He was very happy.

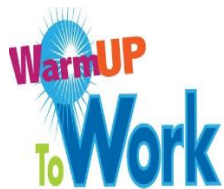
But, Al spent too much money. Soon my friend was **down and out** again. He had no money left. He was back to being **strapped for cash**. He had spent his **bottom dollar**, his very last amount. He did not even build up a **nest egg**. He had not saved any of the money.

I admit I do feel sorry for my friend. He had enough money to live like a king. Instead, he is back to living **on a shoestring** -- a very low budget. Some might say he is **penny wise and pound foolish**. He was wise about small things, but not about important things.

[https:// www.lingualeo.com](https://www.lingualeo.com)

Section III. CLIMATE AND WEATHER

Unit 1. CLIMATE VS WEATHER



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in pairs. When you hear the words climate, weather what associations do you have?

- How is climate related to weather?
- Is weather a bunch of bizarre events that happen in the atmosphere all over the world?
- Do you agree with the following statement? Climate helps you understand the weather in your own part of the world.



BEFORE READING TASK

Match the words and expressions in bold in the text with the correct definitions.

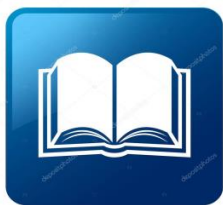
1. It is the concentration of water vapour present in the air. Water vapour, the gaseous state of water, is generally invisible to the human eye. It indicates the likelihood for precipitation, dew, or fog to be present.

2. It is opposite to a cyclone. It is a weather phenomenon defined as “a large-scale circulation of winds around a central region of high atmospheric pressure.”

3. Water that falls from the clouds towards the ground, especially as rain or snow.

4. It is a term used in meteorology to describe the front end or advancing edge of an air mass that will soon replace the air mass that's over a specific region.

5. In geography, it is a geographic coordinate that specifies the north–south position of a point on the Earth's surface.



READING FOCUS 1

Read the text below and state the difference between climate and weather.

WEATHER OR CLIMATE. WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE?

What is weather?

Weather describes the condition of the atmosphere over a short period of time e.g. from day to day or week to week, while climate describes average conditions over a longer period of time. Step outside and you experience many facets of weather. **Humidity**, air temperature and pressure, wind speed and direction, cloud cover and type, and the amount and form of precipitation are all atmospheric characteristics of the momentary conditions we call weather.

The sun is ultimately responsible for the weather. Its rays are absorbed differently by land and water surfaces (equal amounts of solar radiation heat the ground more quickly than they do water). Differential warming, in turn, causes variations in the temperature and pressure of overlying air masses.

As an air mass warms, it becomes lighter and rises higher into the atmosphere. As an air mass cools, it becomes heavier and sinks. Pressure differences between masses of air generate winds, which tend to blow from high-pressure areas to areas of low pressure. Fast-moving, upper atmosphere winds known as jet streams help move weather systems around the world.

Large weather systems called cyclones rotate counterclockwise in the Northern Hemisphere (clockwise in the Southern Hemisphere); they are also called “lows,” because their centers are low-pressure areas. Clouds and **precipitation** are usually associated with these systems. **Anticyclones**, or “highs,” rotate in the opposite direction and are high-pressure areas – usually bringing clearer skies and more settled weather.

The boundary between two air masses is called a **weather front**. Here, wind, temperature, and humidity change abruptly, producing atmospheric instability. When things get “out of balance” in the atmosphere, storms develop, bringing rain or snow and sometimes thunder and lightning too.

The weather you experience is influenced by many factors, including your location's **latitude**, elevation, and proximity to water bodies. Even the degree of urban development, which creates “heat islands,” and the amount of snow cover, which chills an overlying air mass, play important roles.

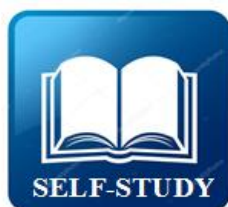
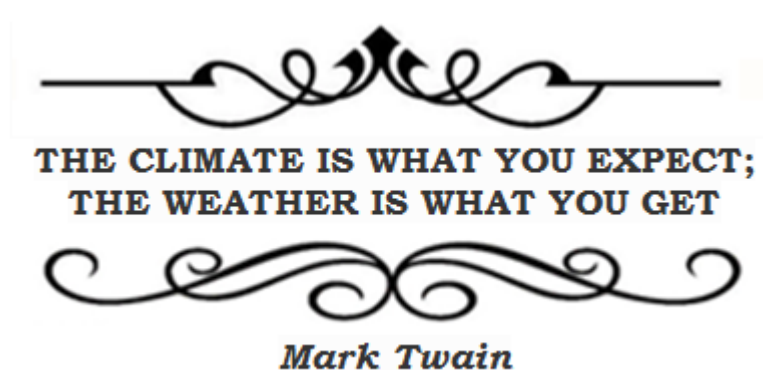
The next time you watch a weather report on television, think about the many factors that influence our weather, some thousands of miles away, that help make the weather what it is.

What is climate?

It has been said that “climate is what you expect; weather is what you get”. In other words, you can expect snow in Russia in January, but you may or may not get it on a particular day.

The climate of an area or country is known through the average weather over a long period of time. If an area has more dry days throughout the year than wet days, it would be described as a dry climate; a place which has more cold days than hot days would make it known to have a cold climate.

<https://www.nationalgeographic.org>



READING FOCUS 2

CLIMATE AROUND THE WORLD

The weather can be truly unpredictable. It can change day-to-day, or even hour-to-hour. Nevertheless, we can still notice certain weather patterns. We know when to expect snow, or when to book our summer holiday. These weather patterns, distinct from one region to another, are called **climate**.

A Brief Introduction to Climate

Climate differs from one part of the world to another. Some regions have four seasons each year, while others can be snow-covered most of the time. These differences also have an impact on the biodiversity in the area. It would be hard to find a polar bear in a tropical place like Thailand.

Scientists distinguish among different types of climate based on specific features. Most commonly, these features are the average temperature and precipitation (how much rain or snow falls in a place). Sometimes, they will also look into how windy it is, and whether it is foggy or humid.

What does climate depend on?

Firstly, latitude, which is the distance of a place north or south of the equator. (The equator is the line half-distance between the two poles.)

Secondly, elevation, which is the height of a place above sea level.

Thirdly, the biosphere, which means all living things and their environment, because, for example, forests have a cooling impact on climate.

Lastly, humans, too, have been altering landscapes and influencing these weather patterns with their activities.

Köppen Classification System

There are several classification systems designed for climate types. The most popular one is called the Köppen system. Wladimir Köppen was a Russian-German scientist who, in 1900, proposed a method which studies vegetation (all the plants found in an area), temperature, and precipitation to group different climate regions.

There are five climate groups, each of them is further divided into types.

Tropical

The tropical climate is hot and humid, usually with an abundant rainfall. This high level of temperature is maintained with little variation throughout the year. There are three types of tropical climate:

Tropical Wet Climates

Tropical wet climates are unique for places known as rain forests. These regions are located around the equator, and have the most predictable weather pattern of all – temperatures are consistently high throughout the year, and rain falls regularly. Places with tropical wet climate are, for example, Hawaii, or Kuala Lumpur in Malaysia.

Tropical Monsoon Climates

A monsoon is a wind in southern Asia that brings heavy rains in the summer. Tropical monsoon climates are characterized by this wind system, called monsoon, which changes its direction twice a year – from sea to land in the summer, and from land to sea in the winter. In places with tropical monsoon climates like India and Bangladesh, people's crops growth relies on the seasonal rains brought by summer monsoons.

Tropical Wet and Dry Climates

Tropical wet and dry climates have three seasons: a cold and dry season; a hot and dry season; a hot and wet season. Cuba and parts of Africa can experience drought when very little rain falls, or floods when there is too much rain.

Dry

Dry climate is specific for regions with low precipitation (rain and snow). Based on how much rain falls, there are two dry climate types: arid and semiarid.

Arid Climates

Arid means very dry and with little or no rain. Arid climates are unique for deserts and cover nearly 33% of the planet. Some of the hottest places on Earth, like Libya, where the temperature reached 136° F (58° C), have an arid climate.

To be categorized as an arid climate type, a region must receive less than 10 inches (25.4 cm) of rain per year, although many of them do not get that much rain in 10 years.

Semi-arid Climates

Semi means half or partly. Semi-arid climates are the next driest type of climate. They receive slightly more rainfall – 10-20 inches (25-50cm) per year. Semi-arid climates are further split into two types: hot and cold. The regions with semiarid climates always surround arid climate regions. There is sometimes enough rain to support farming, but often there is drought. The city of Denver in Colorado is a representative of this climate type.

Mild (also called temperate)

Mild or temperate means not too hot and not too cold. Temperate climates are those without extremes of temperature and precipitation (rain and snow). These areas are usually mid-way between the equator and the poles. They are often found near a warm ocean or sea.

There are three types of mild climates:

The Mediterranean Climate

The Mediterranean type's characteristics are warm summers with little or no rain, and short, mild winters. Places with this climate are located along the Mediterranean Sea.

Humid Subtropical Climates

Humid subtropical climates have more rain, spread throughout the year, and colder winters. Sometimes, big storms and even hurricanes can occur. These places include Sydney in Australia and Shanghai in China.

The Marine West Coast Climate

Marine means relating to the sea. The Marine West Coast type, typically found on western coasts of continents, is affected by the presence of mountains. The temperatures in places like Seattle, the US, or Wellington, New Zealand (which have this climate type) do not change much. In addition, there is an abundance of precipitation throughout the year, and the sky is often cloudy.

Continental

In continental climate zones, winters are colder and longer, and the differences in weather conditions from one season to another are more drastic. In general, all three continental climate types are only found in the Northern Hemisphere, in Europe, Russia, and North America. This type of climate is called continental because it is typical of the interior of a continent, where there are no nearby oceans to moderate weather conditions.

Humid Continental Climate / Warm Summer

The humid continental climate type is defined by four seasons. Summer is warm, rainy, and humid, fall is cool and dry, winter is harsh and cold and, and spring is warm and wet. Most of Eastern Europe has this climate.

Cool Summer Climates

Places in the European part of Russia, which have cool summer climates, traditionally witness very low temperatures and snow in the winter, and mild, cool summers.

Subarctic Climates

Alaska, Scandinavia, Siberia, and parts of Canada have subarctic climates, known for very long, dark, cold winters, and short summers.

Polar

Polar means “connected with the North or South Pole or near them”. The polar climate is found near the Poles. There are two types of polar climates: the tundra and the ice cap. These climate types have the lowest temperatures on Earth.

Tundra

A tundra is a large, flat area of land with only low growing plants. It is found in very cold regions of earth. Tree growth is difficult there because of the cold temperatures. Tundra climates are found along the coast of the Arctic Ocean in the north. They have short and mild summers, but are still very rich in animal and plant life. These are the places where polar bears and reindeers live.

Ice Cap

The ice cap is a layer of ice covering parts of the earth around the North and South Poles. Very few organisms can survive in the ice cap climate. Both the Arctic (the North Pole and its surroundings) and Antarctic (the South Pole and its surroundings) have this climate type. It is not uncommon that everything stays frozen even during the summer, and there is very little rain. When it comes to animals, penguins are known to be fond of this climate type.

<https://www.nationalgeographic.org>



POST-READING TASK

Answer the questions.

1. What does “drought” mean?
 - a) long period with low temperatures
 - b) long period with a lot of rain
 - c) long period with little or no rain
2. What does “humid” mean?
 - a) with low presence of sun
 - b) with high level of water vapor in the air
 - c) with large quantity of ice
3. What does “alter” mean?
 - a) to change something slightly but significantly
 - b) to export something
 - c) to continually add new buildings
4. What does “feature” mean?
 - a) distinctive attribute, characteristic
 - b) precise measurement
 - c) significant historical event
5. What does “drastic” mean?
 - a) happening in a theater
 - b) extreme, severe
 - c) insignificant
6. When we want to ... our summer holiday, we look at the weather forecast.
 - a) schedule
 - b) book
 - c) order
7. Denver is ... of the semiarid climate type.
 - a) an illustration
 - b) a representative
 - c) a spokesperson

8. Penguins are fond ... cold climate types.
- a) of
 - b) in
 - c) about
9. Sometimes, scientists look ... windiness and fogginess to learn about climate types.
- a) onto
 - b) under
 - c) into
10. Although the weather is unpredictable, there are certain weather
- a) schemes
 - b) arrangements
 - c) patterns
11. In Bangladesh, farmers rely on ... rains.
- a) seasonal
 - b) biannual
 - c) occasional
12. Forests have a cooling ... on climate.
- a) influence
 - b) consequence
 - c) impact
13. Each climate group is ... divided into types.
- a) extra
 - b) further
 - c) later
14. Tropical wet climates have the most ... weather pattern.
- a) formularized
 - b) unsurprising
 - c) predictable
15. Mediterranean regions have ... winters.
- a) light
 - b) mild
 - c) gentle

2. Answer the questions.

1. Why can there be droughts in savannas?
 - a) because too much rain can fall
 - b) because too little snow can fall
 - c) because too little rain can fall
2. When do monsoons bring rain?
 - a) in the winter
 - b) in the summer
 - c) all year long
3. What is latitude?
 - a) the distance from the equator
 - b) the distance from the North Pole
 - c) the distance from the ocean
4. How can you distinguish between rainforests and savannas?
 - a) savannas have two wet seasons
 - b) savannas have two dry seasons
 - c) rainforests have rain every day
5. Which climate group do penguins prefer?
 - a) dry
 - b) continental
 - c) polar



LANGUAGE FOCUS

CLIMATE AND METAPHORS

A. Weather conversations

Here are some less common but nonetheless useful words about weather, so that you can have typical weather conversations where you agree with someone by using a near-synonym. In these examples, B replies using more informal language.

A: Bit **cold** today, isn't it?
 B: Yes, it's **chilly/freezing/nippy**, isn't it?
 A: It's **hot**, isn't it?
 B: Yes, it's **boiling/sweltering/roasting**!
 A: It's a bit **windy** today!
 B: Yes, really **blowy/breezy**, isn't it?
 A: What **oppressive/sultry** weather!
 B: Yes, isn't it **stifling/heavy/close**?
 A: What a **downpour/deluge**!
 B: Yes, it's **chucking it down / it's pouring**!
 A: Isn't it **humid** today?
 B: Yes, horrible **muggy/clammy/sticky** weather!

B. Climate and metaphors

Climate metaphors are often used, particularly in written English.

1. The word **climate** can refer to the general atmosphere or situation in society.
2. His secrecy and dishonesty created a **climate of distrust**.
3. The government reforms have contributed to a **climate of change**.

The words **cultural, current, economic, financial, moral, political, social** and **prevailing** all collocate strongly with **climate** in this social sense.

1. She has a very **sunny disposition** – she's hardly ever miserable.
2. Though they won the championship last year, the outlook for the team is less **sunny** this year.
3. Unfortunately, our plans met with a **frosty** reception.
4. I'm **snowed under** with work – I'll never get through it all in time.
5. After the company accounts were examined, the manager left **under a cloud**.
6. Don't let your love for him **cloud** your judgement.
7. The soldiers were hit with a **hail** of bullets.
8. The Prime Minister was greeted with a **hail/storm of abuse**.
9. I've only a **hazy** memory of my first day at school.
10. The truth is hidden in the **mists** of history.
11. The article sparked a **whirlwind** of speculation.
12. They had a **whirlwind romance** and got married just a month after they met.
13. The horses **thundered down** the racetrack.
14. **Thunderous applause** followed his speech. (Note that thundery is used to describe stormy weather while thunderous describes a loud, deep noise.)
15. The **winds of change/discontent/democracy are blowing** across the country.

<https://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>



POST-READING TASK

1. Respond to these statements about the weather. Agree using slightly more formal language like that of speaker A in the conversations on the opposite page.

1. It's a bit nippy outside, isn't it?
2. What a sweltering day!
3. Isn't it muggy here?
4. It's blowy, isn't it?
5. Close today, isn't it?
6. It's chucking it down!
7. It's clammy today, isn't it?
8. What a sticky day!

2. What are the metaphorical meanings of these words from B opposite?

1. Sunny – pleasant and positive;
2. Frosty;
3. To cloud;
4. Snowed under;
5. Whirlwind;
6. Hail;
7. Climate;
8. Hazy;
9. To thunder.

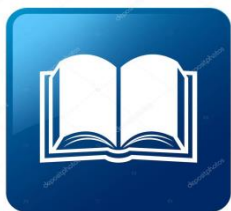
3. Find collocations for these words. You will find some on the opposite page, but use a dictionary to find more if necessary.

1. Climate;
2. Prevailing;
3. To cloud;
4. The winds of;
5. A frosty;
6. A hail of;

4. Read the text below and find words in it which mean the following.

1. Average;
2. Dry;
3. Height above sea level;
4. Distance from the equator;
5. Rain and snow;
6. Rays from the sun;
7. Make less extreme;
8. Situated very far from the sea;
9. Differing weather conditions at different times of the year.

Schemes for dividing the Earth into climatic regions are based on a combination of indices of mean annual temperature, mean monthly temperature, annual precipitation totals and seasonality. The climate of a place is affected by several factors. Latitude affects the amount of solar radiation received, with the greatest in equatorial regions and the least in polar regions. Elevation affects both temperature and precipitation; mountainous areas are generally cooler and wetter. Location close to the sea or to large bodies of water moderates temperature; continental areas are generally more arid and more affected by extremes of temperature.



READING FOCUS 3

BRITISH WEATHER

“It is commonly observed, that when two Englishmen meet, their first talk is of the weather; they are in haste to tell each other, what each must already know, that it is hot or cold, bright or cloudy, windy or calm.” It’s a bit of a cliché, but it’s true: The longer any given conversation in Britain, the higher the chance that the weather will be mentioned at some point.

So what is British weather?

It’s always the same, and yet it’s never the same, which again makes for perfect conversation fodder. Britain tends to have three seasons: a cold season, a wet season, and a cold and wet season. John Cleese once told David Letterman, “We have a national holiday. It’s called summer.” And there’s more truth in that than one might realise, because Britain is indeed such a rainy place that one would be lucky to get a whole week of uninterrupted sunshine.

The British Isles are actually quite far north – at the same latitude as Canada, the Baltics, Russia and some parts of Scandinavia – but it rarely sees extreme weather in either direction, because the Gulf Stream comes in over the Atlantic from the southwest, moderating the colder air from the north, so it never gets that cold. The high latitude and the prominent ocean winds mean it never gets that hot either. But the Gulf Stream also brings rain and storms with it, hence all the rain.

Bill Bryson once noted seeing a forecast of “Warm and dry, with cooler and rainy spells”, and commented that such a forecast could apply to any day of the year, and for all he knew it was printed every day. He further noted that unless you decide to go hiking up Ben Nevis in your dressing gown, you can probably get away with wearing the same thing all year round – as long as it comes with a hood or umbrella. There is no bad weather, only bad clothing.

British seasons

British summer is a bit hard to define. Brits consider anything over 14 degrees Celsius quite pleasant, and anything over 20 degrees pretty hot. In all seriousness, it rarely goes over 30 degrees and has never gone over 40. The best weather in Britain is considered “cricket and strawberries” weather. If it goes over 35 degrees, the yellower press will start issuing horror stories about heat stroke, UV rays, and how the entire country is going to melt or die of thirst in a drought.

British winter also tends to be mild. Snow can happen, but it’s uncommon, and any significant amount of snow in most parts of the country will grind it to a halt, particularly in the cities and on the railways, and the news coverage will report breathlessly on it. Heavy snow is somewhat more common in Scotland, but not by much. All of this, of course, does not prevent British Christmas cards, decorations, and illustrations from being full of pretty snow and snowmen.

British rain

The rain is the universal constant to British weather. Virtually every day, somewhere in the country will have a downpour. In Wales, the dampest part of Britain, the weather forecast will predict rain on pretty much any given day. The East Coast is supposed to be drier, but that’s just relative; they might get away with two or three days of sunshine before a thunderstorm finishes it off.

Rain very often factors into the British sporting culture, but in very different ways depending on the sport. Cricket will pause when it feels so much as a drizzle – perfect time for a tea break, but it’s a wonder how the sport could have become so popular in a country so rainy. On the other hand, football will only stop if the pitch is literally frozen or flooded, and even then only in the professional ranks. Rugby won’t be called off for anything less than a direct meteor strike.

British people are very proud of their rain. Glasgow celebrated being listed as the rainiest city in the country by average rainfall, which came as a shock to the inhabitants of Cardiff.

British wind

Britain sees a lot of wind, of varying strengths and directions, such that an expert weather speaker will note the peculiar nature of the wind on that particular day. The British Isles facing the Atlantic Ocean, the wind likes to come in from that direction, but that part of Europe being particularly low-lying, you can get wind from pretty much everywhere. It’s pervasive enough that a favourite pastime of schoolchildren on a windy day is to lift their jacket up over their heads and walk into the wind.

Britain usually doesn’t see hurricanes, because the sea is too cold for that. There are occasionally storms with hurricane-force winds, but since hurricanes by definition occur in the tropics, such storms are not hurricanes, in spite of the fact that they can be quite dangerous and destructive to persons and property.

Britain has a surprisingly high number of tornadoes, with the highest number of reported tornadoes relative to land mass of any country in the world. However, such tornadoes pale by comparison, in both number and intensity, to the kind typically found in the United States.

British fog

Tropes like *A Foggy Day in London Town* may lead one to believe that Britain, and especially London, is incredibly foggy. In fact, it used to be like that, but not anymore, at least in part because such fog was really smog – it mixed with the huge amount of pollutants being belched into the atmosphere. The Great Smog of 1952, which killed an estimated 12,000 people in greater London, was the impetus for some long-needed legislation clamping down on pollutants and mandating clean air across the country, so that's why you don't see that level of fog anymore.

<https://www.britannica.com>



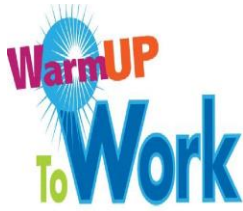
SPEAKING TASK

Discuss with you groupmates the following questions.

1. What is the climate like in your country?
2. How would you describe the weather in your city?



Unit 2. WEATHER FORECASTING



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- How do you learn about the weather? Do you listen to the weather forecasts on the radio? Watch it on TV?
- Where do you find the most reliable forecasts?
- How do television stations secure weather reports?
- Why is it important to know future weather conditions in advanced?
- When would knowing tomorrow's weather change you plans?
- Have you ever checked the weather for your city on the Internet?



BEFORE READING TASK

1. Look at the following groups or pairs of words and discuss what the difference is between them.

- 1) snow, sleet and hail;
- 2) a storm and a blizzard;
- 3) a breeze, a gale and a hurricane;
- 4) flooding and droughts;
- 5) mist and fog;
- 6) a shower and sunny spells;
- 7) rain and humidity;
- 8) a hurricane and a tornado.

2. Match an adjective below in column A to a noun in column B so that they form strong collocations. In some cases there will be more than one possibility. Use a monolingual dictionary to help you.

A

torrential

flash

severe

dense

sunny

freak

violent

high

B

gales

humidity

spells

weather conditions

rain

storms

floods

fog



SPEAKING TASK

1. Discuss the following questions with a partner.

1. In what ways can we predict the weather?
2. There are many sayings in English about the weather. For example: Red sky at night, shepherd's delight; red sky in the morning, shepherd's warning. What do you think this saying means? Are there any similar sayings in your own language? Can you translate them into English and say what they mean?
3. Do you think the weather can influence our moods? If so, in what way?
4. Do you think the weather can influence the personalities of people living in different countries or regions? If so, in what way?

2. Read the article and answer the following questions.

1. According to scientific studies, what effects can the weather have on people?
2. What causes changes in the weather in the British Isles?
3. According to some researchers, what effect has human activity in Europe and North America had on Africa?
4. How can pine cones and seaweed help us predict the weather?
5. How reliable is technology in predicting the weather?
6. What did a recent study by an Australian psychologist suggest?
7. What's the connection between weather and disease?
8. What are storm chasers?



READING FOCUS 1

ALL ABOUT WEATHER

It's hardly surprising that weather is a favourite topic for so many people around the world – it affects where we choose to live, what we wear, our moods, and perhaps even our national characteristics. A sunny day can relieve the deepest depression, while extreme weather can destroy homes and threaten lives.

The effects of weather

Palm trees bent double in hurricane force winds, cars stranded in snow drifts, people navigating small boats down flooded city streets – images we are all familiar with from news reports of severe weather spells. But many of the effects of the weather are less newsworthy.

'I'm feeling a bit under the weather' is a common complaint in Britain, especially on Monday mornings, and it seems that weather really can be responsible for moods. Studies have shown that changeable weather can make it hard to concentrate, cloudy skies slow down reflexes, and high humidity with hot, dry winds makes many people irritable and snappy.

Some suggest that the weather also leaves its mark on character, giving people from the same region similar temperaments, although it seems that economic, political and social factors are likely to have a much stronger effect than the weather.

What causes changes in the weather?

If you live in a place like Britain, where the weather seems to change daily if not hourly, you could be forgiven for thinking that the weather is random. In fact the weather is controlled by systems which move around areas of the globe. In the UK the weather depends on depressions, often called 'lows', and anticyclones, also known as 'highs'. These systems start in the Atlantic Ocean, and make their way across the British Isles from the west to the east. Highs bring sunny weather, while lows bring rain and wind.

The weather systems in tropical climates are very different from those in mid and high latitudes. Tropical storms develop from depressions, and often build into cyclones, violent storms featuring hurricanes and torrential rain.

In modern times, human activity seems to be altering weather patterns. Gases produced by heavy industry change the temperature of the Earth's surface, and affect cloud formation. Some researchers say that factories in Europe and North America may have been one of the causes of the droughts in Africa in the 1980s.

Can we predict the weather?

The human race has always tried to guess the weather, especially in areas of the world where there are frequent changes. Traditional rhymes point to early attempts to identify weather patterns, popular poems include:

Red sky at night, shepherds' delight; Red sky in the morning, shepherds' warning

Ash leaf before the oak, then we will have a summer soak;

Oak leaf before the ash, the summer comes without a splash Flies will swarm before a storm.

Rain before 7, clear by 11.

Two other popular traditional ways of forecasting the weather used pine cones and seaweed. When the air has a high level of humidity there is a higher chance of rain, when the humidity is low, there is more chance of fine weather. Pine cones and seaweed react to changes in humidity – pines cones open, and seaweed feels dry when the humidity is low, while high humidity has the opposite effect.

While folk wisdom can still provide a guide to help forecast weather, today's methods of prediction increasingly rely on technology. Satellites, balloons, ships, aircraft and weather centres with sensitive monitoring equipment, send data to computers. The data is then processed, and the weather predicted. However, even this system cannot predict weather for longer than about week.

A recent study by an Australian psychologist suggests that certain people may have a special gift for predicting the weather. However it is possible that these people would use their talent in another way, since the same group had considerable success in forecasting changes in another chaotic system – the stock market.

It appears that a study of weather patterns may also enable scientists to predict the outbreak of disease. An Ebola epidemic in Uganda in the year 2000 came after the same rare weather conditions that had been present before an outbreak 6 years earlier. Efforts to limit the spread of airborne diseases such as foot and mouth, are also strongly dependent on favourable wind conditions.

Extreme weather

Although people in Britain often moan about the weather, we should spare a thought for the inhabitants of parts of the world where extreme weather regularly wreaks havoc on the environment and population. Sandstorms, tornadoes, blizzards and flash floods regularly kill thousands of people and leave many others homeless.

While most of us try to avoid extreme weather, some adventurous souls actively seek out places where extreme weather conditions exist. Sports such as surfing, kiteboarding, ice-climbing and white-water rafting are becoming

increasingly popular with people seeking relief from the monotony of daily routine. Extreme sports are about exhilaration, skill and danger, and often harness the weather to provide adrenaline addicts with their kicks.

Even more extraordinary are storm-chasers – weather enthusiasts who risk their lives following tornadoes and thunderstorms at high speed to witness the damage they cause at close hand.

<https://www.nationalgeographic.org>



SPEAKING TASK

In pairs, ask students to discuss the following questions.

1. Had you heard of any of the ideas in the article before?
2. Are there any parts of the article that you agree or disagree with? Why?
3. Have you ever experienced any extreme weather conditions? Where were you and what was it like?



**IT'S RAINING
CATS AND DOGS**

Meaning
IT'S RAINING VERY HEAVILY

THE WEATHER WAS HORRIBLE ON
SATURDAY. **IT WAS RAINING CATS
AND DOGS** ALL DAY.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. Cold weather

In Northern Europe, **daytime** temperatures are often quite mild, even in **late** autumn. The days are often **misty**, foggy and **damp**. Soon, winter arrives, with **frost**, icy roads and **severe** weather, including heavy snow. As people expect the weather to be bad, they try and keep warm so they don't freeze! Freezing weather may continue in the far north until May or even June, when the ground starts to **thaw** and the ice **melts** again.

B. Hot weather

In a tropical climate, the weather is often **stifling**, **muggy** and **humid**. In other hot climates, there may be **boiling** hot days, and **heatwaves** may be common.

C. Wet weather

This wet weather scale gets stronger from left to right.

shower(noun) → heavy rain → pour down (verb) / downpour(noun) → torrential rain → flood (noun and verb)

This rain won't last long; it's only a **shower**. [short period of rain]

There was quite **heavy rain** during the night. / It **rained heavily** during the night.

It was absolutely **pouring down** yesterday. / There was a real **downpour**.

In Malaysia there is usually torrential rain most days, and the roads sometimes get **flooded**. / There are sometimes **floods** on the roads.

The sky's a bit **overcast**; I think it's going to rain. [very cloudy]

We had a **drought** last summer. It didn't rain for six weeks.

D. Wind

There was a **gentle breeze** on the beach, just enough to cool us.

There was a very **strong/high wind** and my umbrella blew away.

There was a **gale** that day, so we didn't go sailing. [very high wind]

People stayed indoors because there was a **hurricane** on the way. [extremely high, dangerous wind]

<https://busyteacher.org>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Answer the questions about the words in A opposite.

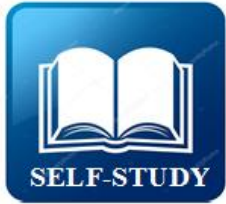
1. Which adjective would you use before 'summer' to refer to the end part of it?
2. Which verb means the temperature has gone up and there is no longer frost or ice?
3. Which word can be used to describe something that happens in the day?
4. What happens to ice cream on a very hot day?
5. If you see a thin, white covering on everything on a cold day, what is it?
6. If you can't see things in the distance, what is the weather probably like?
7. Which two adjectives could you use to describe a wind that blows very hard?
8. Which adjective can you use to describe very bad weather?

2. Rewrite the words in bold using words from B opposite.

I think it would be interesting to live in a **hot** climate. However, I don't like weather that is **hot and damp and makes you sweat...** I even dislike the days that are **slightly warm and damp...** which we get in the UK. Some people love extremely hot days, and I don't mind **very hot, dry periods...** occasionally, but when it's **hot and uncomfortable and you can hardly breathe...**, it's just impossible. Maybe I should stay at home and forget about moving to a hot climate!

3. What kinds of weather do you think caused the following to happen? Write a sentence which could go before each of these. Use words from the opposite page.

1. We had to use the air-conditioning every afternoon.
2. The sweat was pouring out of us.
3. It just cooled us nicely on the hot beach.
4. Cars were sliding everywhere out of control.
5. The postman had to use a boat to get around.
6. You couldn't really see the trees in the distance.
7. The earth became rock hard and a lot of plants died.
8. It blew the newspaper right out of my hands.
9. My hair and clothes got soaking wet.
10. It looked as if it would rain at any minute.



READING FOCUS 2

WEATHER PREDICTION: HOW IS WEATHER FORECASTING DONE?

Why is it important to record daily weather?

Weather forecasting has been an important part of traditions in all civilizations for thousands of years. Farmers wanted to know the weather conditions for their crops, merchants needed favourable weather to begin their sea-voyages and even the common man wanted to know how the weather would be in the future. Since there were no modern tools to predict the weather, everyone looked for the signs in nature. Most of the times, the ancient people banked on old mythological proverbs and religious faiths.

When did modern weather forecasting begin?

Few hundred years ago, a naval officer named Robert Fitz Roy came up with the idea of predicting the weather. He was deeply troubled by the massive loss of life at sea because of the extreme and unpredictable weather. He decided to set up an office in London where he used some basic equipment such as the barometer, nautical charts, and recorded patterns to predict the weather. As the telegraph network expanded in 1830s, Fitz Roy could gather weather data from different coasts at his London office. If he thought a storm was around the corner, he immediately released a warning telegraph to the concerned port where a drum was raised to alarm the sailors. Though he had to face a lot of ridicule from the society, he continued working on weather predictions. Finally, in 1861, his forecasts started getting printed daily in 'The Times' newspaper of London. The first ever daily weather forecasts were published in The Times on August 1, 1861.

How do meteorologists forecast the weather?

Meteorology is the study of weather and the atmosphere. A meteorologist is a person who studies weather patterns and predicts how the weather would be in the future. All of you would have seen a meteorologist, or weather person, talking about weather on the news channels. Meteorologists gather information about the weather from satellites, balloons, and other instruments. They use powerful computers to analyse the collected data, and then, draw weather maps to predict the weather.

What are the different gadgets to predict weather?

A Thermometer measures the air temperature.

A Barometer is a scientific device used by meteorologists to measure air pressure. When the barometer readings shoot up, it indicates sunny and dry weather, and when barometer readings fall down, it indicates rain and stormy weather.

A Rain Gauge measures the amount of rain fallen over a time-period.

A Wind Vane is an instrument that tells the direction of the wind.

An Anemometer measures wind speed.

Weather Maps show atmospheric conditions over a large portion of the Earth's surface.

A Hygrometer is a scientific instrument to measure the humidity in the air.

A Weather Balloon measures weather conditions high up in the atmosphere.

Weather Satellites are used to photograph and track large-scale air movements taking place over the Earth's surface from the space.

Why is weather forecasting important?

There are several reasons why weather forecasts are important. Weather forecasting is a science, that impacts the lives of many people. It forewarns the people about the future weather conditions so that people can plan their activities accordingly. It warns people about the impending severe weather conditions and other weather hazards such as thunder storms, hurricanes, and heavy rainfalls. Thus far, accurate weather predictions have been able to save the lives of many people.

Are weather forecasts always correct?

Well, there has been a significant development in the technology of weather forecasting over the last 20 years. The weather forecast stations of today are much better equipped to provide advanced warnings of severe weather and save lives of many, but they are not always accurate. There is a lot of scope for improvement. Accurate weather forecasting requires powerful computers and lots of observational data collected from land, sea and air. A single weather station does not have the equipment to collect so much information and any major weather forecast is made only after a careful study of data received from thousands of stations across the globe. The other thing is that it is hard to predict the weather, as weather patterns are always changing.

<https://www.nationalgeographic.org>



LANGUAGE FOCUS

A. Rain and snow

Phrasal verb	Definition of phrasal verb	Example
beat down	come down in large amounts with force	Lying in bed, I could hear the rain beating down
pelt down (informal)	fall very heavily	The rain was pelting down by the time we got to the top of the mountain
hold off	not start., although you expect it to	Fortunately the snow held off until we had got safely home.
freeze up	become blocked with ice and stop working	It was a very hard winter last year and many people had problems with pipes freezing up .

B. Sun and clouds

If the sun **breaks through** (the clouds), it starts to appear from behind the clouds.

If the sun **beats down**, it shines very strongly and makes the air hot.

If some kind of bad weather such as clouds or fog **rolls in**, it appears in a large amount.

If cloud or smoke **blots out** the sun, it covers it and prevents it from being seen.

If windows or glasses **fog/mist/steam up**, they become covered with small drops of water and you can't see through them.

C. Metaphors

I suspected there would be trouble at the office as soon as the new boss **breezed in** on his first day. He was very competent and he'd **breezed through** the job interview, but he had no patience at all for anyone less able and he had a very sharp tongue. I noticed that as soon as he spoke to his PA, her face **clouded over** in anger. He asked the sales manager to explain some contradictory figures in such an aggressive manner that she **froze up** and couldn't say a word. I could see her eyes **misting over**. By the end of that first day, his PA had **stormed out**, saying she would never return. The rest of us got together after work and decided that we had no choice but to try to **freeze him out**. We agreed only to speak to him if we absolutely had to.



POST-READING TASK

1. Complete the text below using the correct particles from A opposite.

The weather forecast said that there would be rain later on, but we were all hoping that it would hold... (1) until Julia's birthday barbecue was over. When we first arrived, the sun was beating... (2) and some people were too hot. But then grey clouds appeared and the rain started. At first it was quite light but then it began to pelt... (3). We had to cook indoors but Julia wasn't too disappointed.

2. Read the sentences below and explain, if you feel happy or unhappy in these situations.

1. You receive a letter that makes your face **cloud over**.
2. You are walking by the sea when fog **rolls in**.
3. You can hear the rain **beating down** outside as you sit by a big log fire.
4. You are on a long country walk and the rain **holds off**.
5. You have to give a speech at a friend's wedding and you **freeze up**.
6. You **breeze through** an important exam.
7. You **storm out** of a meeting.
8. A group of friends start to **freeze you out**.
9. You are sitting on the beach and the sun is **beating down**.

3. Complete these sentences using a phrasal verb from the opposite page in an appropriate form. Add any other words that are needed.

1. Ellis arrived an hour late but he didn't seem worried; he just ...
2. It was such a sad film. When the hero died I could feel my eyes ...
3. Whenever I go from a cold street into a heated shop, my glasses ...
4. I can see a little bit of blue sky. I think the sun is trying to ...
5. We're going to an open air concert tonight. I hope the rain ...
6. I think the weather's changing for the worse. Look at those clouds ...
7. Don't worry about your driving test. I'm sure you'll ...
8. I always get really nervous before oral exams. I'm afraid I'll ...



READING FOCUS 3

WEATHER REPORTS FOR JAPAN, CANADA, SCOTLAND AND FINLAND

Read the text below about weather reports. Choose the statements which are correct about the countries

Weather Report for Japan

We have come to the end of the monsoon season now and, indeed, winter is fast approaching. Right on cue, we can expect a band of Arctic air to sweep down over the country from Siberia. It's a little early in the season yet for snow, but expect the next few days to be markedly colder than recent weeks. Daytime temperatures could fall by as much as 10 degrees, so do make sure you put on an extra layer if you are going out. This will be especially important in the late evening as the clear skies will see night-time temperatures plummet below freezing and we may experience our first frosts of the year, so care on the roads is also advised. Towards the latter half of the week, however, a warm front will encroach from the south, so southerly regions can expect increased levels of precipitation towards the weekend. The warmer air will nudge its way slowly upwards and begin to dominate weather patterns, so we are likely to see a return to milder weather for the whole country by the end of the week.

Weather Report for Canada

The signs are not good for the winter sports industry, which took a battering last season. It will continue wet and windy, but temperatures will remain at or above normal, so there is little chance of an early dusting of snow on the mountains. Unfortunately, all our long-range forecasts seem to suggest a mild winter, so there is not much cause for optimism, it would seem. Getting back to the week ahead, we will have a break from the rain midweek when high pressure moves in from the west. By Thursday, most of central Canada will be dry, though the coastal regions can still expect to experience some light showers from time to time. Newfoundland will be the exception; as the depression holds on here, so islanders can expect to see a continuation of the miserable wet weather they've had up to now. In fact, a flood warning is in place as the rain is expected to be heavy and persistent and there is a high risk of the already swollen rivers breaking their banks.

Weather Report for Scotland

The British Isles are having an unusually good spell of weather at the moment, and there doesn't seem to be any sign that you should pack away those swimming trunks yet. In fact, our weather model for the next ten days shows continued fine weather. It would be too much to ask for the temperatures to remain at their record highs; however, it will stay dry and calm, and unseasonably mild. Top daytime temperatures will reach about twenty-one degrees and the temperature won't fall any lower than fourteen or fifteen at night. Of course, we'd like to remind everyone that the UV Index is still quite high, so please ensure that you apply protection to your skin if you are going to go outside during the day for any significant length of time.

Weather Report for Finland

In the west, rain **set in** early this morning and will continue throughout the day. The rain will **let up** by evening and will **clear up** by midnight. In the east, winds will **pick up** in the afternoon, becoming strong by evening. This will be good news for Easterners, who have suffered heavy **downpours** every day this week. Many families were **flooded out** and forced to leave their homes. Conditions will **dry off** over the next few days. In the south, last week's storms have finally **blown over**. Tomorrow it will **brighten up** as skies clear. Temperatures are expected to rise and it should **warm up** to 5°C by mid-week. However, the region will **cloud over** again by the weekend. In the north, residents experienced extreme cold with harsh winds and wind-chill to -45°C over the weekend. Local activities were **called off**. Everyone made sure to **put their parkas on** before going out. This week snowstorms are forecast. 30 – 50 cm will fall by mid-week. People are advised to check their emergency stores in case they get **snowed in** for a few days.

<https://www.cbsnews.com/weather>

WEATHER
IS A GREAT METAPHOR FOR LIFE



SOMETIMES IT'S GOOD,
SOMETIMES IT'S BAD,
AND THERE'S NOTHING MUCH YOU CAN
DO ABOUT IT BUT CARRY AN UMBRELLA





POST-READING TASK

Answer the questions.

In which weather report is the following stated?

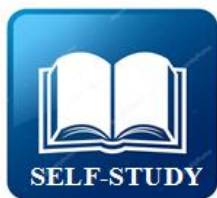
- 1) there will be a very significant temperature drop;
- 2) nights will be cold due to lack of cloud cover;
- 3) the remains of a big storm may be felt at the weekend;
- 4) it would be wise to wear sunscreen if outside a lot;
- 5) the prospects for a certain type of winter activity look poor;
- 6) different weather may be experienced inland and near the sea;
- 7) there may be a serious danger of water levels rising;
- 8) record-high temperatures were experienced recently.



BEFORE READING TASK

Match the definitions (a–h) with the vocabulary (1–8).

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. ... throughout | a. a small area |
| 2. ... isolated | b. to disappear |
| 3. ... a patch | c. on its own, without other similar things around it |
| 4. ...drizzle | d. during all of a period of time |
| 5. ... to clear up | e. in other places |
| 6. ... elsewhere | f. to move so that there is space for something to enter |
| 7. ... a heatwave | g. very light rain |
| 8. ... to make way for | h. a period of weather that is much hotter than normal |



READING FOCUS 4

Read the weather forecast and do the exercises.

BBC WEATHER FORECAST FOR THE UK

Hello and good morning! Well, we're off to a good start in the south this week, as most of the rain from the weekend has disappeared – just a few patches of cloud and maybe some showers here on the east coast. They'll all clear up by lunchtime, though. Over the next day or so, London and the area around Kent can expect a couple of isolated showers, but mostly dry through until Thursday. It's not such good news for the north-west this week, I'm afraid: more wet weather, and not a lot of sunshine. Some of today's showers will be heavy – and even thundery in Manchester and across the Pennines. Leeds will escape the thunderstorms, with drizzle and light rain only throughout the rest of the day and tonight. Elsewhere it becomes dry today, but with some foggy patches towards Wales. In England, tomorrow morning will see a dry, bright start in most places, with high temperatures throughout the week. We might see one or two thunderstorms appearing as the week goes on, with temperatures everywhere at 29 to 30 degrees.

By the weekend, unfortunately, the dry weather will make way for mostly cloudy skies and rain. The rain will move from Scotland, down towards the north and reach the south coast by Saturday afternoon. Temperatures, at least, will stay mostly warm at around 21 degrees for the weekend. It might feel like a nice change from the high twenties and early thirties we'll see in the week. That's all from me until tomorrow. Enjoy the mini-heat wave while you can!

<https://www.bbc.com/weather>



POST-READING TASK

Are the sentences true or false?

1. It will start raining at lunchtime today in the east.
2. The weather in the north-west will be worse than in the south.
3. There will be thunder in Leeds tonight.
4. Most of England will be hot this week.
5. Wet weather will move from the north to the south at the weekend.
6. It will stay hot when the rain comes.

LET UP

Meaning

TO BECOME WEAKER OR
TO BECOME LESS INTENSE

THE RAIN IS STILL HEAVY,
SO LET'S WAIT HERE UNTIL
IT **LETS UP** A BIT

SNOWBALL EFFECT

Meaning

A SITUATION WHERE SOMETHING GROWS
IN SIZE AT AN INCREASING RATE

THE MORE SUCCESSFUL YOU BECOME,
THE MORE PUBLICITY YOU GET
AND THAT PUBLICITY GENERATES SALES.
IT'S A SORT OF **SNOWBALL EFFECT**.

BE SNOWED UNDER

Meaning

TO HAVE TOO MUCH WORK TO DO

I WAS SO **SNOWED UNDER** WITH
WORK TODAY THAT I DIDN'T EVEN
HAVE TIME FOR LUNCH

ON THIN ICE

Meaning

IN A RISKY POSITION,
IN A DANGEROUS SITUATION

THE STUDENT WAS **ON THIN ICE**
BECAUSE HE WAS ABSENT FROM
CLASS TOO MANY TIMES

SNOWBALL'S CHANCE IN HELL

Meaning

NO CHANCE AT ALL

THAT SMALL BOAT HAS A
SNOWBALL'S CHANCE IN HELL
OF SURVIVING THE HURRICANE

IN HOT WATER

Meaning

IN TROUBLE

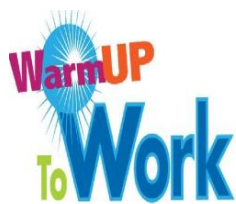
I AM **IN HOT WATER** WITH MY
TEACHER, BECAUSE SHE CAUGHT
ME CHEATING ON THE FINAL EXAM



1. What is the weather like where you live?
2. In which ways the weather forecasts are useful?
3. What kind of weather do you like best?
4. Do the weather effects how you feel?

[illegible]

Unit 3. EXTREME WEATHER AND CLIMATE CHANGE



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

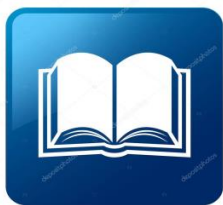
- What are some other examples of bad weather in the world?
- Which countries do you associate with flooding, drought, forest fires, tsunami?
- Do different parts of your country experience different types of bad weather?
- Why do you think people call it “bad weather”?
- Do you think bad weather can ever be dangerous?
- What is the worst weather you have ever seen? Have you ever experienced extreme weather, such as hurricanes, cyclones, tsunami, flooding, etc.? What happened?



BEFORE READING TASK

Match the words and expressions in bold in the text with the correct definitions.

1. A violent, short-lived weather disturbance that is almost always associated with lightning, thunder, dense clouds, heavy rain or hail, and strong, gusty winds.
2. A climate event during which the eastern and central Pacific Ocean near the equator becomes cooler.
3. A long period of very dry weather.
4. A gas produced by all animals when the oxygen they inhale reacts with the carbon-rich foods that they’ve eaten. This colorless, odorless gas also is released when organic matter (including fossil fuels like oil or gas) is burned. It acts as a greenhouse gas, trapping heat in Earth’s atmosphere. Plants convert this gas into oxygen during photosynthesis, the process they use to make their own food.
5. The warming of Earth’s atmosphere due to the buildup of heat-trapping gases, such as carbon dioxide and methane. Scientists refer to these pollutants as greenhouse gases.



READING FOCUS 1

FINGERPRINT OF CLIMATE CHANGE SHOWS UP IN SOME EXTREME WEATHER

People living in Australia, Europe and the USA experienced a miserably hot summer this year. In fact, it was the hottest summer ever recorded. Earlier that spring, much of East Africa was so dry that farmers had trouble growing their crops.

Scientists have now concluded that these extreme weather episodes, half a world apart, were among several known events caused at least partly by global warming. The researchers' findings appear in a new report, published by the American Meteorological Society.

Some human activities, like driving cars and operating factories, spew **carbon dioxide** and other pollutant gases into the atmosphere. These gases slowly warm the planet – like a low-grade fever – through a process known as the “**greenhouse effect**.” The new research suggests that this warming trend and the way it is changing Earth's climate is helping to trigger extreme weather.

It might seem obvious that global warming would contribute to hot, dry weather. But scientists cannot assume the two are linked.

Climate change is a slow process that happens over decades or centuries. Weather refers to the temperature, the amount of rain and other conditions that occur at a particular time and place. Even without climate warming, weather can vary dramatically from year to year in the same place – like your home town. That normal variability makes it difficult for scientists to figure out whether global warming is responsible for making any particular weather event more extreme.

But scientists can calculate whether climate change made an extreme weather event more likely. David Rupp is a climate researcher at New York University. He and his colleagues made such a calculation to understand better the heat wave in the USA. They knew that the hot, dry weather was probably caused partly by an event called **La Niña**. Each La Niña, which can last several years, marks a time when the eastern and central Pacific Ocean near the equator gets colder. The cold water, along with stronger winds blowing across the ocean from east to west, shifts the location of big clusters of **thunderstorms** in the tropics. The change in the storms' location affects air flow patterns in other parts of the world and tends to make them drier.

But La Niña was not the only reason for the **drought**. The scientists compared the likelihood of extreme heat waves in the USA in recent years to those in other La Niña periods in the 1960s. Because of global warming, the chance that a La Niña would bring the USA unseasonably hot weather is now 20 times higher than 50 years ago, Rupp's team estimates.

La Niña also helped trigger the drought in Africa. At the same time, however, global warming has heated the Indian and western Pacific Oceans. This change in ocean temperature altered the weather, making the drought worse.

Sometimes, extreme weather happens for reasons other than climate change. Last year, Thailand got a lot of rain and suffered worse **flooding** than at any time in recorded history. But the problem wasn't global warming, researchers concluded in the new report. Other factors, such as construction of buildings on farmland or on low-lying areas near rivers, made the water drain more slowly. Here, community decisions on where to build and how to control river flow exaggerated the effect of heavy rains.

<http://www.sciencenewsforstudents.org>



——

WHEN IT RAINS, IT POURS



Proverb



LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. Use the words below to complete the text.

mist	frost	sleet	rain	hail	wind
fog	smog	snow	blizzard	lightning	thunder

Listen to the pouring (1)... outside, and the roar of the (2)... as it blows through the trees. Listen to the clatter of icy (3)... on the window and the crashing of the (4)..., while (5)... flashes across the sky. See the thick, grey (6)... and the thin, grey, wet (7)... . Smell the dirty, bitter, yellow-grey (8)... in the city. Feel the crunch of (9)... under your feet as you walk on the icy grass, and shake the freezing, wet (10)... and (11)... from your hair as the howling (12)... turns the world to white.

2. Look at the words below and decide which definition, A, B or C, best describes each one.

hurricane

- a) a storm over high mountains, usually accompanied by snow;
- b) a tropical storm with strong winds and rain;
- c) a very quick, but very heavy, rain shower;

tornado

- a) a long, heavy snow shower, accompanied by strong winds;
- b) a long period when there is no rain and when the land is dry;
- c) a violent storm with a whirlwind;

volcano

- a) a violent shaking of the earth's surface;
- c) a strong wind caused by a drop in air pressure;
- b) a mountain with a hole in the top through which lava, ash and gas can come out;

drought

- a) a storm, usually without rain, which happens in hot countries;
- b) a very long period of rain;
- c) a long period when there is no rain and when the land is dry;

flood

- a) a large amount of water over land which is usually dry;
- b) a large area of dry land which should usually be wet (e.g., a dry lake);
- c) a lake or river which has been poisoned by pollution;

earthquake

- a) a long, heavy snow shower, accompanied by strong winds;
- b) a shaking of the earth caused by, for example, volcanic activity;
- c) a large area of dry land which should usually be wet;

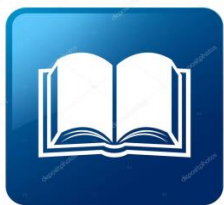
tsunami

- a) a tropical storm with strong winds and rain;
- b) a huge wave in the sea, caused by an underwater earthquake;
- c) a long period when there is no rain and when the land is dry.

3. Replace the words and expressions in bold with a suitable word or expression from the box.

under a cloud	bucketing down	weather	boiling
steals my thunder	on cloud nine	heavy weather of it	
storm in a teacup	under the weather	cats and dogs	
downpour	every cloud has a silver lining		

1. It's raining a lot.
2. It's pouring with rain.
3. It's very hot in our office at the moment.
4. We could ask him to sort out the invoices, but he'll make it unnecessarily difficult and complicated.
5. Jan's feeling unwell.
6. There was a sudden heavy fall of rain and all the spectators ran inside.
7. I don't know if we can survive this crisis without any extra cash.
8. However gloomy things may seem, there is always some aspect which is good.
9. They were very happy when they won the lottery.
10. Ben was under suspicion for a long time after the thefts were discovered.
11. Whenever I have a great idea, Penny spoils it by doing it first and getting all the credit.
12. Sarah thought it was important, but in fact it was a lot of fuss about something which was very trivial



READING FOCUS 2

FOUL WEATHER THREATENS HOLIDAY

Kate in St. Lucia

I don't like the wind: it reminds me of when I was in a hurricane on holiday one year. I was only young and on holiday with my parents and it was the middle of summer. We'd been on the beach all day in glorious sunshine when suddenly the sky began to get very dark. Lots of people started leaving the beach and told us we should do the same. No one seemed to be panicking but there was definitely a sense of urgency. When we got back to the hotel they told us it would be better to stay downstairs in the lounge room and that if we had to go to our rooms we should not go anywhere near the balcony and keep all the doors and windows shut. So we stayed in the hotel restaurant and listened to the wind and the rain outside. We couldn't see anything because all the shutters were closed. The most frightening thing was looking outside in the morning after the storm had passed. The hotel garden was devastated; two small trees had been knocked down and many others had branches broken off. It was terrible.

Lauren in Sydney

The strangest thing I've ever seen is a dust storm. I woke up and looked outside and everything was red. It was really weird; there was an eerie orange fog, just like something out of a science fiction film about an alien invasion or something. I was quite scared being on my own and turned the TV on to find out what was going on and that's when I found it was a dust storm and not the end of the world. I felt calmer after that. Apparently it was caused by a combination of very dry weather and strong winds. They were recommending people stay inside as there had been reports of people suffering breathing problems but I had to go to work so I just wrapped a scarf around my face and went out in it. It didn't last long and started to clear by the middle of the afternoon but it caused a lot of disruption; they had to cancel lots of flights and ferries.

Ryan in New York

I love the winter, blue skies and really cold temperatures and snow. I love going for walks in the cold weather but one year on holiday in New York I had quite a frightening experience in the snow. My girlfriend and I were on holiday and

when it started snowing we thought it was wonderful. We were quite a long way from our hotel and being young and naive we thought it would be fun to walk in the snow. We weren't very well dressed for the weather and had completely under-estimated how much it was going to snow. Within about ten minutes we could no longer see where we were going and it was impossible to tell where the road was. It was dangerous. It was a proper blizzard and very disorientating. All we could see was white. We got back to the hotel eventually but if I found myself in a situation like that again I think I would be much more sensible: I'd stay in the warm until the snow had passed.

Jim in Scotland

The weather was dreadful; we were there for a week and the storms just never **let up**. We were **flooded out** twice in our tent and ended up staying in a hostel. It just **poured down** every day - one heavy **downpour** after another. We were **rained off** most days and couldn't do any serious walking. Then one day we thought the storms had **blown over**, so we climbed one of the highest peaks in the area. It started to snow. Luckily there was a cabin at the summit, so we took shelter there. We were **snowed in** for two days before we could get out and go back down again. I will never forget it as long as I live!

<https://www.learningenglish.voanews.com>



POST-READING TASK

Answer the questions.

1. Which person would act differently if they were in the same situation again?
2. Which person couldn't see where they were because of the bad weather conditions?
3. Which person did not follow the advice they were given?
4. Which person still likes a certain type of weather despite a bad experience in the past?
5. Which person followed the advice some other people gave them?
6. Which person was alone when they experienced the bad weather conditions?
7. Which person wore extra clothes to protect themselves from bad weather conditions?
8. Which person does not like a certain type of weather because of their bad experience?



LANGUAGE FOCUS

WEATHER GONE WILD

Read the newspaper headlines, pay attention to the use of phrasal verbs.

HURRICANE **RIPS THROUGH** WESTERN FLORIDA

Thousands evacuated as fire **takes hold** in Alicante province

HOUSES **SWEPT AWAY BY** FLOOD WATERS

Climate change **wreaks havoc on** coral reefs worldwide

Survivors **caught up in** north Indian floods **come to terms with** loss of homes

ETHIOPIA **IN THE GRIP OF SEVERE DROUGHT**

Coal mine **caves in** following flood, but no **lives lost**

BUSH FIRES IN SOUTHERN AUSTRALIA **WIPE OUT** WHOLE TOWNS

<https://www.english-magazine.com>

rip through smth

move forcefully and rapidly through smth

take (a) hold

sweep smth away

become very strong and difficult to remove or stop (often passive) (of floods, a tornado, etc.) completely destroy smth

wreak havoc (on sth)

cause a lot of damage, destruction, or confusion.

be/get caught up in smth

become involved in smth undesirable

come to terms with smth

gradually accept a difficult or unpleasant situation

in the grip of smth

experiencing smth unpleasant that cannot be stopped

cave in (on smb/smith)

(of a roof, wall, etc.) collapse and fall

lose your life

move forcefully and rapidly through smth



POST-READING TASKS

1. One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

1. It's hard to get to terms with the loss of whole communities.
2. A South American civilization was wiped off by earthquakes 3,800 years ago.
3. The tornado is wreaking damage on all parts of the region.
4. The roof caved down, and the people below were lucky to survive.
5. Many tourists have been caught up on the forest fires in California.
6. As the fire started to make hold, people ran to escape the flames.

2. Complete the text with an idiom or phrasal verb from the box in the correct form.

caught up	rip through	come to terms	sweep smth away
cave in	loss of life	in the grip	

Texans are counting the cost and beginning to come to terms with the devastation caused by bad weather: the state of Texas is (1)... of the worst winter for twenty years. Fierce winds have (2)... central Texas this week, and several tornadoes have (3)... on a line of small towns in their path. Local resident Clint Vaughn saw his home (4)... by rising floodwater. 'It came so fast, we barely had time to get out; we almost got (5)... in the destruction; I stood with my mouth open as the roof of the house just (6)... It was terrifying,' Vaughn said. 'Astonishingly, there has been no (7)..., but many have been injured and the hospitals are full to overflowing.'

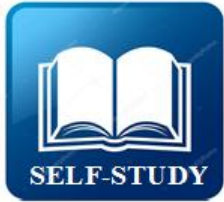
Heavy snow

The heavy and unexpected snowfall in recent days has had serious consequences. Motorists **heading for** the city centre on the A36 **were caught unawares** as traffic **came to a standstill**. Trapped in their cars for hours, they were finally rescued and **towed away**. Supplies of salt and grit for the roads **are running low**, which may **put lives at risk**. Some rural areas **have been snowed in** and villages temporarily **cut off**. Children **have been turned away** from schools due to teacher shortages, and workplaces have been closed **for the foreseeable future**. Snow is still falling **thick and fast**, so the Met Office is advising people to stay at home.

head for something	move towards a place. <i>syn</i> make for smth
catch somebody unawares	happen in a way that smb was not expecting and was not prepared for
come to a standstill/halt	slowly stop completely. <i>syn</i> grind to a standstill/halt
tow somebody/something away	(of a driver or car) pull another car using a rope or chain
run low	If your supply of smth is running low or you are running low on smth, you only have
at risk (of/from something)	in danger of smth unpleasant or harmful happening (put lives at risk)
be snowed in	be unable to leave a place because of heavy snow
be cut off	be unable to leave a place or receive visitors or services from outside
turn somebody away for the foreseeable future	refuse to allow smb to enter a place for the period of time when you can predict what is going to happen, based on present circumstances
thick and fast	happening very quickly and in large amounts or numbers

3. Write in the missing preposition or adverb.

1. We were turned... from the airport.
2. They were snowed... for days.
3. The cottage was cut...
4. Make... the nearest exit quickly.
5. Luckily, no lives were put... risk.
6. Traffic ground... a standstill.
7. The cars were towed...
8. It will last... the foreseeable future.



READING FOCUS 3

SEVERE WEATHER SAFETY TIPS

It pays to know what to do when a storm is coming. It can save your life. Here are some safety tips.

Thunderstorm Safety

- Look for shelter, such as a building or car. No matter what, do not take shelter under trees because trees attract lightning.
- If you are in the open, never lie down on the ground during a storm, because after lightning strikes, it usually spreads out on the ground. The safest position is to put your feet close together and crouch down with your head as low as possible, curled up in a tight squat.

Tornado Safety

• The key word in tornado safety is DOWN. Go to a basement if you can. If you are in a building without a basement, go to a closet or bathroom. In either case, get under a heavy piece of furniture or inside the bathtub and protect your head and neck with your arms.

- Do not stand on a hilltop or open field.
- If you are in or on the water, get out or get off.
- Do not carry anything made of metal.
- Do not use the telephone. If lightning strikes the phone line, the strike can travel to you if you are holding the phone. If you must call someone, use a cordless phone or a cell phone.
- Do not use electrical appliances. Lightning could follow the wire.
- Stay away from plumbing pipes (sink, bathtub, or shower). Lightning can cause an electrical charge in the metal pipes.
- Mobile homes usually collapse or get blown off their foundations during a tornado. If you are inside one, get outside, preferably to a basement. Otherwise, lie down in a ditch or depression in the ground and protect your head and neck with your arms.
- Don't get in a car or other vehicle; vehicles have been blown over a mile away by tornadoes.
- Stay away from doors and windows.

Hurricane Safety

- Before a hurricane comes, board up windows. Pick up loose things in the yard. Get a battery powered radio and store some water.
- If a hurricane is moving into your area, go to higher ground far inland.
- If you cannot leave the area, get inside a concrete building on the highest ground available.
- Stay away from doors and windows.
- Do not go outside.

<http://www.bbc.co.uk>



SPEAKING TASK

Thunderbolts and lightning can be very frightening, but how best to stay safe when a storm breaks?



STORM IN A TEACUP

Meaning

A LOT OF ANGER OR WORRY ABOUT SOMETHING THAT IS NOT IMPORTANT

ALL THE REPORTS ABOUT GLOBAL WARMING ARE A **STORM IN A TEACUP** - IT'S NOT AS DANGEROUS AS THEY SAY

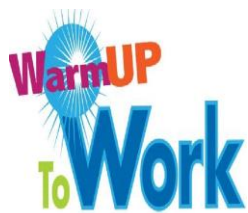
THE CALM BEFORE THE STORM

Meaning

A PEACEFUL AND QUIET PERIOD BEFORE A PERIOD OF ACTIVITY OR TROUBLE

THE FAMILY ARE ARRIVING THIS AFTERNOON SO I'M JUST SITTING DOWN WITH A CUP OF COFFEE, ENJOYING **THE CALM BEFORE THE STORM**

Unit 4. WEATHER AND MOOD: SUNNY AND GREY IMPACTS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- What effects does the weather have on people?
- What do people in your country do when the weather is bad?
- How do people deal with bad weather?
- Do you think there is anything that we can do to prevent bad weather?
- Is there anything we can do to prepare for bad weather?
- How does bad weather affect people?
- Does bad weather ever affect people's ability to travel?
- Do you think the weather (or climate) can affect people's mood?
- How does bad weather affect people's mood?
- Do you think people become depressed or bored during bad weather?
- Why do people live in places where the weather can sometimes be bad?
- Do you think people's personalities are influenced by the type of weather (or climate) they usually experience?
- Do you think people who live in cold places have different personalities to people who live in warm or hot places?



READING FOCUS 1

Read the article and describe psychological and social benefits of good weather.

HERE COMES THE SUN: HOW THE WEATHER AFFECTS OUR MOOD

The weather supplies many metaphors for our changeable minds. Moods can brighten and darken, dispositions can be sunny, futures can be under a cloud and relationships can be stormy. Like the weather, our emotions sometimes seem like

fickle forces of nature: unstable, enveloping and uncontrollable. Weather provides a vivid language for describing our emotional atmosphere, but does it also influence it? Do grey days bring grey moods?

Of the many aspects of weather, sunshine is the most intimately tied to mood. Exposing skin to sunlight produces vitamin D, promoting the brain's production of serotonin, which lifts mood, dampen negative moods and diminish tiredness.

Anything that alters our moods can affect our behaviour. Happy people are more favourably disposed to one another, and accordingly people are more helpful when the sun is out. One study found that Minnesotan diners tipped more generously on sunny days.

Research by Sydney's Joseph Forgas shows that weather can also affect our mental sharpness. In a paper titled "Clouds make nerds look good", scientists showed that university admissions officers weighted the academic credentials of applicants more on overcast days, and their non-academic attributes more on sunny ones.

Temperature can also affect our mind and behaviour, independently of sunshine. The more it departs from an ideal of around 20°C the more discomfort we feel. One study found that rates of helping declined as temperatures dropped below or rose above this value. In addition, the higher the temperature, the more people are likely to act aggressively. Rates of aggression are higher in hotter years, months, days and times of day. However, the effects of weather on mood are not straightforwardly biological. They are also psychological and social. One reason why heat is associated with aggression is that people interact more in public in hot weather.

Aspects of weather beyond heat and sunshine have also been shown to affect mood. Humidity tends to make people more tired and irritable. Barometric pressure fluctuations can alter moods and trigger headaches, some studies finding a link between low pressure and depression. On rainy days people report lower satisfaction with their lives.

The effects of weather on mood depend on our behaviour and on how we think. Most basically, weather will only influence us if we expose ourselves to it. On one estimate, people in industrialised societies tend to spend only 7 per cent of their time outside.

A study by US psychology researcher Matthew Keller and colleagues showed that beneficial effects of warm and sunny conditions on mood were only seen in people who had spent more than 30 minutes outdoors that day. Good weather even had negative effects on mood for people confined indoors, who perhaps gazed enviously outside at the solar fun they were missing.

It is hard to argue with Dr Keller's prescription: "If you wish to reap the psychological benefits of good springtime weather, go outside."

<https://www.thesun.co.uk>



SPEAKING TASK

Work in small groups. Comment on the following statements.

1. The weather affects our mood and our health.
2. The weather can influence our mood and behaviour – and whether it's for better or worse can also depend on where you live.
3. Looking ahead at the weekly forecast, there's a possible chance of the weather producing a sense of joy in some people, or an all-time low in others.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

MOODS ARE WEATHER IDIOMS

1. Literal meanings.

Words which describe weather are often used to talk about people and their moods or emotions. Use these words to complete the following definitions:

shower storm breeze frosty hazy gloomy cloud over cool

1. Another word for a light or moderate wind is a...
2. 10 minutes of light rain is a...
3. When the sun is not clear it is...
4. When the temperature drops to just below zero, it is...
5. A day with lots of dark cloud is...
6. Sometimes even the sunniest skies can... and the day turns dull.
7. When the wind gets very strong, get ready for a...
8. Spring days can be quite warm, but it is usually... in the evening.

2. Storming in

Underline the correct word in the sentences below:

1. It was obvious that Charles was angry. He came **storming/breezing** into the room, threw the contract on the table and demanded to know why he had not been consulted.

2. It was obvious from the way Peter **breezed/stormed** in this morning that Mary had said yes to his proposal.

3. They used to be crazy about each other, but I think the relationship has **cooled/ frozen** recently.

4. Meeting Jane's parents for the first time was a bit worrying, but they gave me a very **sunny /warm** welcome. Her mother was lovely.

5. The car broke down on the way to my husband's parents. We were two hours late for Sunday lunch. You can imagine we got a rather **frosty/wet** reception.

6. Ladies and gentlemen, can I start by thanking you for giving me such a **warm/hot** welcome.

7. What's the matter? Cheer up! You look a bit **foggy /gloomy**.

8. I wish Dave was more dynamic. He always seems to be half asleep – he's a bit **damp/wet**, really.

9. My students really annoy me sometimes – particularly when they never do their homework. They really are a **shower/storm**!

3. Match the following adjectives to their moods:

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. frosty | 2. warm | 3. hazy | 4. stormy | 5. gloomy |
| a. angry | b. unfriendly | c. sad | d. confused | e. friendly |

4. Under a cloud

Fill in the correct word in the dialogues below:

clouded cloud hazy brighten up warmed up warmed wind

1. Did you hear about David?

– No. Why did he leave so suddenly?

Well, apparently, he left under a... Someone found out that he had been stealing from the company expense account!

2. How was the office party?

– A bit slow at first, but it soon... when the boss left!

3. So, you met my old friend Larry yesterday. What did you think of him?

– A great guy! Yes, I... to him straightaway.

4. Have you replied to that letter from the bank?
– Not yet. Can you help me? I'm a bit... about what to do, actually.
5. Did you have a good time last night?
– Not really. Jill had some sad news which... the whole evening.
6. Well, is it going to be a week sightseeing in Belgium or a fortnight in Bali?
– Let's throw caution to the... Two weeks in the sun! We can worry about paying for it when we come back!
7. Liz seemed a bit depressed this morning.
– Oh, she'll soon... when I tell her she's being sent to Paris!

5. Read the text carefully to find the meaning of the idioms.

For some folks, everything is easy. Life is a **breeze**. They're always healthy. They're never **under the weather**. If they walk into a room full of strangers, they make friends in five minutes. They have no trouble **breaking the ice**. They earn enough to save some money every week. They're **saving money for a rainy day**. So if trouble ever does come, they'll be able **to weather the storm**. Yes, some people have no problems if times are good or bad. They're okay **come rain or shine**.



POST-READING TASK

This is definitely an exaggerated use of idiomatic expressions. But you can see how these expressions make spoken informal language much more colourful and jovial. How good is your idiom intuition? Here are some expressions which you can use to substitute the weather idioms in the short text above.

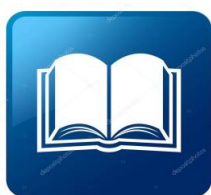
Non-idiomatic Expressions	Weather Idioms
1. something easy for a person to do	a.
2. sick	b.
3. to begin a conversation with a stranger	c.
4. no matter how hard it is to do	d.
5. to prepare for trouble, usually by saving	e.
6. money	f.



SPEAKING TASK

Work in small groups. Answer the questions.

1. If something is a **breeze**, is it easy or hard for you to do? What things are a breeze for you?
2. If you're **under the weather**, how do you feel?
3. When you **break the ice**, what do you do?



READING FOCUS 2

UNDER THE WEATHER

Jenny had an important test coming up on Friday. Thursday evening she started feeling **under the weather**. Earlier in the day, it had **rained cats and dogs** and she got **soaked to the bone** walking home from school. Even though she wasn't feeling like her **usual sunny self**, she had to study. She tried to let how she was feeling **roll off her like water off a duck's back** and kept studying. As she struggled to learn the social studies words, she felt as if her brain were **in a fog**. She dutifully pressed on, but began to feel worse and worse. **Misty-eyed**, she wondered how she was going to learn all the terms in time for the test the next day. She wiped away one tear and then another, but then came a **flood of tears**.

Her mom heard Jenny's sobs and came in to her room. As soon as she saw Jenny, she went to get the thermometer. Sure enough, her **temperature was sky-high** and she was **burning up with fever**.

Mom immediately told Jenny to get into bed. Jenny protested, saying that she would be **in hot water** if she didn't keep studying.

"I hate to be a **wet blanket**," said her mom, "But there will be no test tomorrow – not for you! You are staying home until this fever breaks. Now **wash away those tears** and get some rest, young lady."

With that, Mom tucked Jenny in and gave her a kiss on the forehead. Jenny smiled, not just because Mom's cool lips on her warm skin felt good, but more because she knew her Mom loved her and would take care of her. And that was more important than any test.

<http://www.macmillanglobal.com>



POST-READING TASKS

1. Read the story again. Then answer these questions about the idioms. To help you find them, the idioms are in dark print in the story.

1. What caused Jenny to get sick?
2. What symptom of illness did Jenny have?
3. How did Jenny react as she tried to study?
4. What did Jenny think would happen if she didn't study?
5. Jenny tried not to let how she felt stop her from studying.

2. Describe a time when you tried to let something roll off you like water off a duck's back.

3. Put the correct weather-related idioms in each sentence, paying careful attention to the form.

under the weather
rain on someone's parade
every cloud has a silver lining
head in the clouds
storm in a teacup
get wind of something

it never rains but it pours
under a cloud
hot under the collar
blow hot and cold
make heavy weather of something
any port in a storm

1. I only touched his new car and he went crazy. He is over-protective of it and made a real ...

2. He has been ... ever since he was caught cheating in the exam. Everyone looks at him strangely and it will take him a long time before he is trusted again.

3. If you are feeling a bit ..., go and have a walk around the block, get some fresh air and try and calm down a bit.

4. Are you feeling a bit ...? You have been looking a bit tired and ill since you arrived in the office this morning.

5. First the bank sent us that rude letter about our loan, then the house got broken into to, then this morning John lost his job! ...

6. I can never tell what mood she is going to be in. She always ... and you have to be really careful around her.

7. When I lost my job three years ago, I felt so depressed but it is true that ... : I started my own business and have been happier ever since.

8. We have hardly any money. You will have to accept any job they offer you because we need to money desperately. We have to accept ...

9. Your uncle was so happy about his new model car that he had finished but his wife turned round and really ... saying it was just a toy for kids.

10. It was only five miles to the next hostel but we ... of it due to the weight of the packs and took nearly three hours to get there.

11. I never knew about the chance of a new job at all. I only ... from Kathy who had overheard the managers talking at lunch in the staff canteen.

12. Daisy always ...— a real dreamer who finds it difficult to accept the mundane in life. She is a typical teenager!

STEAL SOMEONE'S THUNDER

Meaning

TO TAKE CREDIT FOR SOMETHING
THAT SOMEONE ELSE DID

MY PARTNER **STOLE MY THUNDER**
WHEN HE TOLD THE PROFESSOR
THAT HE DID ALL THE WORK
ON THE PRESENTATION

BE LEFT OUT IN THE COLD

Meaning

TO BE IGNORED, FORGOTTEN
AND NEGLECTED

AS SOON AS SHE WENT TO THE TABLE
WHERE THE GROUP WAS SITTING,
THEY STOPPED TALKING.
SHE **WAS LEFT OUT IN THE COLD.**

Unit 5. SEASONS AND HOLIDAYS



WARM-UP ACTIVITY

Discuss in small groups.

- What is the best season to visit your country?
- Which season did you enjoy most when you were a child? Why?
- Does summer feel hotter than it used to? Is autumn shorter or longer?

How have the seasons changed?

- Which color do you mainly associate with each season? Explain your choices.
- Do you enjoy seasonal foods? Which food do you look forward to each year?
- Have you experienced an Indian summer? Did you like it?
- Which season is the most fun? What do you like to do at that time?
- When it's summer in the southern hemisphere, it's winter in the northern

hemisphere, and vice versa. How would life be different in the opposite hemisphere from where you live?

• John Steinbeck said, "What good is the warmth of summer, without the cold of winter to give it sweetness." Do we need winter so that we appreciate summer?

• Do weather conditions affect any of your hobbies? What can't you do if the weather isn't suitable?

TAKE A RAIN CHECK

Meaning

**YOU CAN'T ACCEPT AN INVITATION NOW
BUT YOU WOULD LIKE TO DO IT LATER**

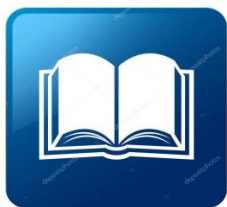
I WOULD LOVE TO GO TO THE CINEMA
BUT I'M BUSY ON SUNDAY.
CAN WE **TAKE A RAIN CHECK**?

**SEE WHICH WAY
THE WIND BLOWS**

Meaning

**TO KNOW WHAT IS LIKELY TO HAPPEN
IN A PARTICULAR SITUATION**

WE SHOULD TALK TO HIM AND
SEE WHICH WAY THE WIND BLOWS
BEFORE WE MAKE ANY DECISIONS



READING FOCUS 1

CELEBRATING THE SEASONS

Our relationship with nature and the cycle of the seasons has long been celebrated by communities in every corner of the UK. Plough Sunday, Michaelmas, Lady Day, Twelfth Night. These were important enough to be fixed in the cultural calendar, expressing a community's reliance on nature and its need to celebrate. Today, few seasonal celebrations and customs have survived. We are no longer bound by harvest and husbandry to the cycle of the seasons, nor are calendars marked with festivals and celebrations that express this powerful reliance and connection with nature.

Yet, the seasons are still part of all of our lives, our language and our culture. Seasonality is experienced in all places, rural and urban alike, binding us to nature and the passing of time. May Day, Apple Day or Harvest Festivals still provide engaging and enjoyable ways to connect with landscapes and help enhance a distinctive sense of identity within local communities. As a nation we have long been fascinated with measuring, recording and predicting seasonal change – sundials, weather kites, barometers, tide bells, all have been invented to harvest water, light, air pressure and wind to help people navigate daily life and foretell what the skies and tides will bring tomorrow. The seasons are part of us, embedded in the joy we feel when spring comes or the blues we feel in mid-winter. Our culture and language is bristling with music, art, myths, poems, sayings, metaphors, all binding our feelings and thoughts to the weather and the seasons. Red sky at night, clear moon frost soon. We can be 'mad as a March hare', feel 'right as rain' or have 'sunny dispositions'.

Days punctuated by night, the waxing and waning of the moon, the rhythm of the seasons and the movement of the sun: these are our building blocks of time, the raw material of almanacs, calendars, our human plans, our celebrations, our hopes and quiet wishes. Before we could read the stars or programme computers, people navigated and predicted the weather by watching clouds, animals, water, or feeling the direction of the wind. The coming seasons were noticed in the first snowdrop, the budding trees, the last swallow, the yellowing leaves, the first ice, reminding us that we are bound to natural events and that we are participating in life, not just standing and watching from the side-lines.

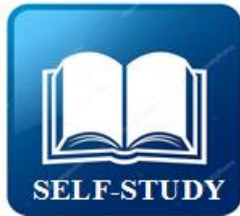


SPEAKING TASK

Discuss in small groups. What does a particular season mean to you? Describe your favourite season in your country. You should say:

- what it is and when it comes;
- what the season is like;
- changes that happen and things you like to do during this season.

Explain why this is your favourite season.



READING FOCUS 2

SPRING CELEBRATIONS AROUND THE WORLD

As spring surfaces to drive out the last gloomy traces of winter, we can finally start to look forward to sunnier days. Part of the beauty of spring's arrival is how differently it's celebrated around the world. Every country has its own unique way of welcoming the new season, be it through a festival, parade, or meal.

Cimburijada in Bosnia

In Bosnia, they celebrate the onset of spring with food. Cimburijada is a 'Festival of Scrambled Eggs' where people gather in the city park on the banks of Bosna River to have "free scrambled eggs". It is one of the most delicious spring festivals around the world. Why egg, you ask? Why not something else? You see, the egg symbolizes the beginning of a new life, in this case, a new season. Scrambled eggs are made in large quantities to distribute amongst the crowd. The festival is so popular that it attracts visitors from all around the world.

Cooper's Hill Cheese-Rolling and Wake in England

Every year, during the second bank holiday weekend, the Gloucester cheese-rolling takes place on Cooper's Hill. Located just an hour by car from Bristol, the innocuous-sounding event is, in fact, a lot more dangerous than the name would lead you to believe. A wheel of cheese is thrown down the (very) steep hill

and one second later competitors throw themselves down after it. The first one to cross the finish line wins. Bruises, bloodied knees, and broken bones aren't uncommon side-effects of this intense tradition. A slightly rougher way to welcome Spring, but the 200-year-old tradition is proudly upheld by the community, attracting both old and new competitors every year.

White House Easter Egg Roll

Believed to have started in 1814, the White House Easter Egg Roll takes place on Easter Monday every year. For this fun tradition, children gather in Washington D.C. on the White House lawn to roll eggs across the grass with wooden spoons, competing to see who can cross the finish line first. Kids taking part in the competition can win Easter eggs and small prizes, so, with the promise of sweet treats fresh in their minds, morale is usually sky-high. The festivities are overlooked by the US President and their family as well as a giant Easter bunny. With everyone in good spirits and colorful decorations peeking out from every corner, the event is an annual highlight.

Songkran Water festival in Thailand

In mid-April, the three-day Songkran Water festival marks the New Year in Thailand with a massive public water fight, meant to represent a cleansing of negative influences. Though the traditional iteration of the festival activity is a gentle, respectful sprinkling of water onto other people—a sign of respect and blessing—since the celebrations occur during the hottest month of the year in Thailand, revellers frequently douse each other in the streets.

Holi Festival in India

The day after the first full moon of March marks the start of Holi, a Hindu festival with many legends behind it. On the eve of the festival, people light bonfires to celebrate the triumph of good over evil. Ash from the bonfire is considered sacred with many applying the ashes to their foreheads as further protection from evil. On Holi, stores and businesses shut down. Friends, neighbors and strangers pour into the streets in a collective euphoria to celebrate the end of winter by throwing colored water and powder on each other.

Hanami Cherry Blossom Festival in Japan

Every spring, the Japanese gather with friends for picnics under the cherry blossom trees for one of the country's most cherished traditions. To the Japanese, the cherry blossoms' sudden arrival, combined with their tremendous beauty and fleeting nature, symbolizes the transitional nature of life. When the cherry blossoms, or sakura, arrive, the Japanese celebrate by heading outside for picnics and parties under the plentiful trees (hanami). Gatherings are full of food, from Japanese junk food to barbeque to pickled cherry blossom leaves.

Sechseleuten in Switzerland

People in Switzerland are so happy for winters to be over that they celebrate the onset of springs with burning an effigy of a snowman, a tradition dating back to the 16th century. The giant snowman called “Böögg” represents the end of winter and is made with old clothes and fireworks. It is believed that the faster it burns, the sunnier and warmer will be the summer in Switzerland. The two-day event also includes banquets, parades, and humorous speeches, one of the most common traditions around the world for spring festivals.

Stonehenge and the Spring Equinox

Each year druids gather at Stonehenge in England for the first day of spring. They meet for a sunrise ceremony at one of the most ancient sites in the world. Because they honor nature and the cycle of the seasons, the March gathering isn't the only annual celebration at Stonehenge. Ceremonies are also held for the summer and winter solstices and the autumnal equinox. Participants often dress in special costumes – men in light-colored robes and women with flowers in their hair – for this simple celebration of the seasonal shift.

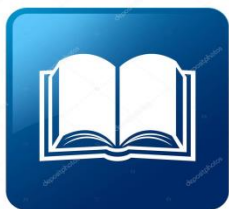
<https://www.nationalgeographic.com>



SPEAKING TASK

Discuss in small groups special traditions associated with different seasons in your country.





READING FOCUS 3

Read the article to find about holidays in the UK.

SUMMER HOLIDAY SEASON IN THE UK

British people usually have their holidays in summer, in July or August. Many people take a two week holiday during the summer. School children are on holiday from approximately the end of July to the start of September. A second holiday break in winter or in spring is also becoming more popular in the UK. In winter some people go skiing in Europe, and in spring, visits to capital cities such as Paris, Amsterdam or Barcelona are popular.

The most popular holiday locations for Brits include Spain, France, Greece and the USA. Lots of people buy a package holiday which includes flights and a hotel or an apartment. Cheap flights to warm places mean that many British people are able to spend two weeks a year relaxing in the sun abroad. Flights and **package holidays** are much cheaper during school term time and the British government is worried that some young people are missing school to go on holiday. Parents who take their child on holiday during term time can now pay a fine of up to 100 pounds.

British people also like to go on holiday in the UK: in England, Northern Ireland, Scotland or Wales. Warm weather and sun are not guaranteed in the UK of course! What can young British people do on a UK holiday? Here are a few examples – Alton Towers, in Staffordshire, is one of the top UK theme parks. It is famous for its terrifying rides and is very popular with teenagers. You can sign up to try their new roller coaster ride on their website. The Eden Project is an environmental project in Cornwall, in the south-west of England. It has huge domes that contain thousands of plants from all around the world. As well as plants you can also see top bands play at the Eden Project.

Camping

Taking your tent or caravan to stay on a campsite is popular, especially in the south of England. Newquay, in Cornwall, on the south coast of England, is a favourite camping area for families and for teenagers. Newquay has great beaches, with good waves for surfers as well as lots of nightlife. Wild camping means you take your tent, sleeping bag, food, water and you find a quiet place to spend the night in the countryside or hills away from roads and houses. Wild camping is legal only in some parts of Britain.

Holiday resorts

A holiday resort provides accommodation, food and entertainment for all the family. Butlin's holiday resorts are very popular today. Prices are low. A seven day July summer holiday at the Skegness Butlin's, on the east coast in England, costs about 130 pounds per person. There's a massive indoor swimming centre with a wave pool and waterslides at the resort. Butlin's 'silent disco' where you listen to music on wireless headphones and dance to your favourite tune (everyone dances to different music!) is a big hit with teens. Other activities aimed specifically at teenagers include Wii and Xbox challenges as well as beach volleyball.

Independent holidays

Some teenagers want to spend their holidays doing something without their family. A language exchange is one way to be more independent and improve language skills. A British teenager spends a week or two in a foreign country, staying with a family who has a son or daughter of the same age and practices the local language. Later the foreign teenager visits the UK to practise their English with the British family. Summer camps can be fun too. Do it 4 Real organises camps for 17-19-year-olds in the UK where young people can do quad biking, paintballing, film making and street dancing. There's also a 'Future leader' camp for 18-19-year-olds where activities include leadership skills as well as raft building, archery, climbing and survival skills.

[https:// www.learnenglish.britishcouncil.org](https://www.learnenglish.britishcouncil.org)



POST-READING TASK

Match the vocabulary with the correct definition and write a–g next to the number 1–7.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. a package holiday | a. staying with a family in a different country to learn a language |
| 2. a rollercoaster | b. a place which provides holiday accommodation, food and entertainment |
| 3. a campsite | c. a ride at a theme park |
| 4. wild camping | d. a flight with hotel or apartment |
| 5. a holiday resort | e. spending the night in a tent in the countryside, not on a campsite |
| 6. a silent disco | f. a place to stay in a tent or caravan |
| 7. a language exchange | g. a place where everybody dances, listening to their own music on headphones |



SPEAKING TASK

You are going to read a magazine article about holidays abroad and answer the following questions.

Are you going on holiday this year?

What do you want from a holiday?

Do you want to go...



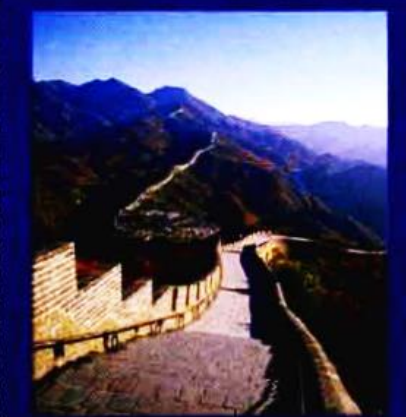
... somewhere vibrant and exciting?

... laze around on a beach and unwind?

... go somewhere remote and get away from it all?

... go on an adventurous holiday?

... wander around interesting towns and villages?

	Unwind on the ALGARVE If you need to unwind , try the Algarve in southern Portugal. Laze around on the golden, sandy beaches, soak up the atmosphere of traditional fishing villages like Alvor, or just go for a wander around Albufeira's old town, which still retains its wonderful charm .	
City breaks in PRAGUE Prague is a stunning city, and this thriving capital of the Czech Republic makes a romantic and vibrant city-break destination. A stroll through Prague's cobbled streets is wonderfully exciting: its architecture is remarkably diverse , and amazingly untouched by the Second World War, although Charles Bridge and the Astronomical Clock have recently been undergoing restoration .		Off the beaten track on the great wall of CHINA Our China trek offers a unique experience for the adventurous traveller who wants to get away from it all . Apart from the spectacular scenery, you will have the rare opportunity to camp in a remote part of rural China and experience local life in its most unspoilt state.

<https://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>



- where you go for the holidays
- how long they last
- who you go with
- weather

and write about anything interesting happens during your holidays.



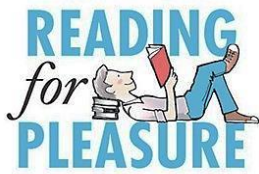
TO GET SOME SUNSHINE,
TO TAN IN THE SUN

**IN HAWAII, I SPENT A LOT OF
TIME LYING ON THE BEACH AND
CATCHING SOME RAYS**

TRAVEL LIGHT

TO BRING VERY FEW THINGS WITH YOU WHEN YOU GO ON A TRIP

I TOOK A TRIP TO LAS VEGAS AND
ALL I TOOK WAS A BACKPACK
BECAUSE I PREFER TO TRAVEL LIGHT



READING FOR PLEASURE

CAN HUMANS MANIPULATE THE WEATHER?

A look at how far we have reached in controlling the climate for our advantage.

James Rodger Fleming says, “Human Hubris is almost universal. There’s this perennial desire to control.” And if we were to believe anyone, it should be Fleming because he literally wrote an entire book on the subject of weather manipulation in 2010. His book titled, “Fixing the Sky: The Checkered History of Weather and Climate Control” essentially talks about history as well as the future of climate control.

In the book, Fleming talks about the alarm that is widespread today over the subject of global warming and how climate engineers can achieve the impossible and control the climate. As big of science fiction as the idea might seem to be, Fleming promises that this idea took root several centuries ago and is not a new development.

So, can we manipulate the weather? Is it possible to control mother nature and make it rain or shine according to the will of humans?

Can You Manipulate the Weather?

Is it possible to manipulate the weather? Many people call it “climate manipulation,” when in reality, weather manipulation and climate manipulation are two very different things.

Humankind has always wanted to conquer everything: The Earth, the sea, the sky, and the Moon. He has taken pains to imitate nature by creating beaches, islands and even artificial snow mountains, among other oddities.

And the dream of modifying the weather has also been present, from the primitive dances to the planting of clouds to rain, the methods have become increasingly sophisticated, at the expense of multimillion-dollar investments that are viewed with some skepticism by scientists.

To get to the point, what may be the underlying causes of the extreme instability of the global climate and the alteration of weather parameters for certain purposes, which has caused devastation everywhere in recent years?

Hurricanes and tropical storms have devastated the Caribbean. Central Asia and the Middle East are tormented by drought. West Africa faces the biggest locust invasion of the last decade and much more.

With global warming continually wreaking havoc on our planet's environment, the National Academy of Sciences (NAS) demanded the deliberate, large-scale manipulation of the Earth's natural systems to counteract climate change. The call generated an essential debate between those who are in favor of the use of this technology and those who believe that our planet will be at a greater risk if this climate control were to take place.

Climate management will continue to be a challenge for society. NAS believes, however, that the risks of not understanding climate intervention are higher than the risks associated with doing so, so they recommend more studies on the controversial issue.

While the concept of geo engineering may seem like something out of a sci-fi film script, some scientists have begun conducting small-scale experiments to intervene in order to reduce the significant damage that global warming is causing to the planet. The two main actions that scientists are investigating are the removal of carbon dioxide to reduce the amount of CO₂ in the atmosphere and the management of solar radiation, which promises lower temperatures when reflecting the sunlight far from the surface of the Earth.

What Is Cloud Seeding and How Does It Work?

Water is scarce when a region is ridden with drought but can humans make it rain voluntarily to generate water? Countless experiments have been conducted on cloud seeding over the years which suggest that humans might, in fact, be able to create rainfall artificially.

Cloud seeding is basically a method using which the amount of rain might be increased. Rainfall takes place when super cooled water droplets form ice crystals. Then, these become too heavy and cannot remain suspended in the air. Therefore, they fall and more often not, melt to form rain on their way down.

It is interesting to note that even in the driest areas there is usually some amount of water in the air. This water can be collected and turned into ice crystals through atmospheric seeding with several chemicals such as dry ice and silver iodide.

These chemicals induce nucleation and promote rainfall.

Despite experiments and studies over the decades, it is still challenging to carry out such controlled experiments and difficult to ascertain if they will actually work. In any case, research continues, and there seems to be a split opinion on whether or not we can carry out weather manipulation to our advantage. If the answer is in the affirmative, we can save the planet and the future generation from a whole lot of trouble!

<http://www.nationalgeographic.com/>

DAFFODILS IN BLOOM, THE WARMEST EVER DECEMBER: HOW WORRYING IS THE WORLD'S STRANGE WEATHER?

While record-breaking temperatures are blamed on the global effects of climate change, naturally warming waters in the Pacific are adding to the effect.

December temperatures in London have been warmer than July's. Scotland is balmy than Barcelona. Artificial snow covers European ski slopes. Africa faces its worst food crisis in a generation as floods and droughts strike vulnerable countries.

With unusual weather from Britain to Australia, scientists are blaming climate change – but also the natural phenomenon called El Niño, which is raising temperatures and disrupting weather patterns. A double whammy then, but how disturbed should we be as the records tumble?

According to the UK Met Office, the exceptional warmth in Britain and northern continental Europe is linked to the strongest El Niño ever recorded. "What we are experiencing is typical of an early winter El Niño effect," said Adam Scaife, head of Met Office long-range forecasting.

The cyclical event, named after the birth of Christ because it traditionally occurs in Latin America around Christmas, sees temperatures in the equatorial Pacific rise several degrees. The consequences in years like this are dramatic. Monsoons and trade winds are disrupted, leading to cyclones, droughts, floods and food shortages across the world.

Friday night was one of the warmest recorded in the UK in December. With the warm spell due to continue over Christmas, it is almost certain that more records will be broken.

Roger Brugge, a senior scientist at Reading University's atmospheric laboratory, said: "The first 17 days of December have been the mildest on record by a remarkable 1.1°C. The average temperature during this period, of 10.6°C, is similar to what can be expected around the beginning of May."

Worldwide, November was the warmest recorded by the US government's National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, and the seventh month in a row where temperatures have been well above the 100-year average.

So is the current spell of exceptional heat around the world a foretaste of life in a warmer climate, or just a temporary blip? Atmospheric scientists believe we are seeing climate change with an El Niño effect on top. The two combined are raising temperatures dramatically.

"We expect this year to be the warmest year ever, primarily because of climate change but around 25% because of El Niño," said Scaife, who added that El Niño was not linked directly to climate change but exacerbates its effects.

The effects are already being seen worldwide, and nowhere more dramatically than in east and southern Africa, which is most vulnerable to climate change and extreme droughts. The El Niño effect has shifted rainfall patterns and led to severe drought.

El Nino explained

The widespread El Niño effects are being felt in Latin America as well as Indonesia and Papua New Guinea, where it has led to some of the worst forest fires in decades. In Central America, one of the most severe droughts on record has led to 3.5 million people in Guatemala, Honduras and El Salvador needing food aid. The UN says that more than two million people have been affected in Peru and Ecuador.

The warm Pacific temperatures have also led to a record number of hurricanes and cyclones. According to the US government's National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's Earth Observatory, there were 18 named storms in 2015, including 13 hurricanes, nine of which were category three or higher. This is the greatest number on record since reliable measurements started in 1971.

Each El Niño is different, but this year is being compared with 1997 and 1998, when 21,000 people died and \$36bn of damage was caused. Scientists say that El Niños can add significantly to climate change. Our planet has altered dramatically because of climate change. This El Niño event and human-induced climate change may interact and modify each other in ways which we have never before experienced. El Niño is turning up the heat even further.”

Flowing Round the World

El Niños occur every two to seven years, when the waters along the equator in the eastern Pacific naturally warm up to 3°C above average. Because this affects air pressure and atmospheric circulation, they can have large-scale impacts on weather around the world. They typically last for nine to 12 months and are followed by a cool phase, La Niña, which often affects the weather in North America and influences the Atlantic hurricane season. It was previously thought that El Niños did not affect Europe greatly, but it's now known that they influence the jet streams and can lead to unusually warm weather around Christmas.

<https://www.theguardian.com>

A TRUE SHORT STORY ABOUT WEATHER PREDICTION

By Elton Camp

In the 1930s, weather forecasting throughout the nation was in its infancy, mainly relying on ground reports, weather balloons and past trends. Advance warning of threatening conditions were rarely possible and people suffered as a result, especially in the rural areas.

People spoke about the “September gales” that occurred in the fall of the year, but had no way to associate them with the remnants of hurricanes that blew into Alabama from the Gulf of Mexico. Even people in South Alabama were often taken by surprise by destructive hurricanes when they arrived with unexpected ferocity. The most lethal hurricane in United States history struck Galveston with warning coming from the weather bureau only within hours of its arrival, far too late to attempt evacuation.

The first year my parents worked in North Alabama, one of the heaviest snowfalls in the history of the area blanketed the ground with nearly two feet of heavy, wet snow. It fell on already frozen ground and the temperature remained well below freezing for weeks afterward. Transportation came to a halt for nearly two weeks. The winter storm had come as a complete surprise to the public and to the weather bureau.

Mother had experienced snow only as scattered flakes in the air where she’d grown up. Her unfamiliarity with North Alabama enabled her husband to have fun at her expense.

“It snows like this a whole lot. I’ve seen it even deeper and it’ll stay most of the winter. We won’t be able to get around. And you’ll go for months without seeing your parents. You might as well get adjusted to it.” It was only after hours of her upset and tears that he admitted the cruel tale was untrue.

The following spring of 1933, they had potentially much more serious encounter with severe weather. One day had been distinctly cool, but overnight a warm front abruptly moved into the area. Due to the clash of temperatures, the sky grew threatening. A dark, ominous wall cloud appeared. Brilliant lightning flashed repeatedly. The thunder from close bolts vibrated the windows of their rural schoolhouse.

“We’d better get all the children in the same room. They’ll feel better with us both,” Eloise urgently whispered to her husband. He nodded in agreement.

As the teachers stared apprehensively out the window, they saw a dark funnel drop suddenly from the wall cloud. It extended almost instantly to the ground and began to roar. Large pieces of hail rocketed from the sky.

“It’s a tornado,” Howard whispered. “There’s no storm pit anywhere that’ll hold this many people. Even if there were, we wouldn’t have time to get to it. We’ll have to ride it out where we are.”

“We’re going to play a game,” she called out to the children with as calm a voice as she could muster. “Everybody get down on the floor under the desks and cover your head with your arms. Anybody who moves or talks loses.”

The children obeyed but giggled at the strange instructions. While the adults watched out the window, the tornado passed on the opposite side of the road from

the school. A dense debris cloud of dust, leaves, limbs, and pieces of tin arose as it ground along. Since it moved parallel to the building, they escaped damage. It might have changed direction at any moment. There had been no advance warning or even notification that threatening conditions were moving into the area.

Significant improvements in weather forecasting didn't come until after the horrible "day of the tornadoes" in the 1970s. The death and destruction of that day, including the nearby town of Guin in Marion County made the government and weather authorities ashamed and they became determined to do better. From that came Doppler weather radar, satellite photos and the warning systems that have saved countless lives.

This year a series of savage tornadoes hit north Alabama. Two towns near here, Phil Campbell and Hackleburg, were devastated. People had at least twenty minutes warning, but the tornado was an EF 5 that leveled even well built houses. Many deaths resulted and there was massive property damage.

Despite advances in weather forecasting, the awe-inspiring power of nature continues to impress.

<https://www.nationalgeographic.com/>

ALL SUMMER IN A DAY

by Ray Bradbury

"Ready?"

"Ready."

"Now?"

"Soon."

"Do the scientists really know? Will it happen today, will it?"

"Look, look; see for yourself!"

The children pressed to each other like so many roses, so many weeds, intermixed, peering out for a look at the hidden sun.

It rained.

It had been raining for seven years; thousands upon thousands of days compounded and filled from one end to the other with rain, with the drum and gush of water, with the sweet crystal fall of showers and the concussion of storms so heavy they were tidal waves come over the islands. A thousand forests had been crushed under the rain and grown up a thousand times to be crushed again. And this was the way life was forever on the planet Venus, and this was the school room of the children of the rocket men and women who had come to a raining world to set up civilization and live out their lives.

“It’s stopping, it’s stopping!”

“Yes, yes!”

Margot stood apart from them, from these children who could ever remember a time when there wasn’t rain and rain and rain. They were all nine years old, and if there had been a day, seven years ago, when the sun came out for an hour and showed its face to the stunned world, they could not recall. Sometimes, at night, she heard them stir, in remembrance, and she knew they were dreaming and remembering gold or a yellow crayon or a coin large enough to buy the world with. She knew they thought they remembered a warmth, like a blushing in the face, in the body, in the arms and legs and trembling hands. But then they always awoke to the tatting drum, the endless shaking down of clear bead necklaces upon the roof, the walk, the gardens, the forests, and their dreams were gone.

All day yesterday they had read in class about the sun. About how like a lemon it was, and how hot. And they had written small stories or essays or poems about it:

I think the sun is a flower, that blooms for just one hour.

That was Margot’s poem, read in a quiet voice in the still classroom while the rain was falling outside.

“Aw, you didn’t write that!” protested one of the boys.

“I did,” said Margot. “I did.”

“William!” said the teacher.

But that was yesterday. Now the rain was slackening, and the children were crushed in the great thick windows.

“Where’s teacher?”

“She’ll be back.”

“She’d better hurry, we’ll miss it!”

They turned on themselves, like a feverish wheel, all tumbling spokes. Margot stood alone. She was a very frail girl who looked as if she had been lost in the rain for years and the rain had washed out the blue from her eyes and the red from her mouth and the yellow from her hair. She was an old photograph dusted from an album, whitened away, and if she spoke at all her voice would be a ghost. Now she stood, separate, staring at the rain and the loud wet world beyond the huge glass.

“What’re you looking at ?” said William.

Margot said nothing.

“Speak when you’re spoken to.”

He gave her a shove. But she did not move; rather she let herself be moved only by him and nothing else. They edged away from her, they would not look at her. She felt them go away. And this was because she would play no games with

them in the echoing tunnels of the underground city. If they tagged her and ran, she stood blinking after them and did not follow. When the class sang songs about happiness and life and games her lips barely moved. Only when they sang about the sun and the summer did her lips move as she watched the drenched windows. And then, of course, the biggest crime of all was that she had come here only five years ago from Earth, and she remembered the sun and the way the sun was and the sky was when she was four in Ohio. And they, they had been on Venus all their lives, and they had been only two years old when last the sun came out and had long since forgotten the color and heat of it and the way it really was.

But Margot remembered.

"It's like a penny," she said once, eyes closed.

"No it's not!" the children cried.

"It's like a fire," she said, "in the stove."

"You're lying, you don't remember!" cried the children.

But she remembered and stood quietly apart from all of them and watched the patterning windows. And once, a month ago, she had refused to shower in the school shower rooms, had clutched her hands to her ears and over her head, screaming the water mustn't touch her head.

There was talk that her father and mother were taking her back to Earth next year; it seemed vital to her that they do so, though it would mean the loss of thousands of dollars to her family. And so, the children hated her for all these reasons of big and little consequence. They hated her pale snow face, her waiting silence, her thinness, and her possible future.

"Get away!" The boy gave her another push. "What're you waiting for?"

Then, for the first time, she turned and looked at him. And what she was waiting for was in her eyes.

"Well, don't wait around here!" cried the boy savagely. "You won't see nothing!"

Her lips moved.

"Nothing !" he cried. "It was all a joke, wasn't it?" He turned to the other children. "Nothing's happening today. Is it ?"

They all blinked at him and then, understanding, laughed and shook their heads.

"Nothing, nothing!"

"Oh, but," Margot whispered, her eyes helpless. "But this is the day, the scientists predict, they say, they know, the sun..."

"All a joke !" said the boy, and seized her roughly. "Hey, everyone, let's put her in a closet before the teacher come!"

"No," said Margot, falling back.

They surged about her, caught her up and bore her, protesting, and then pleading, and then crying, back into a tunnel, a room, a closet, where they slammed and locked the door. They stood looking at the door and saw it tremble from her beating and throwing herself against it. They heard her muffled cries. Then, smiling, she turned and went out and back down the tunnel, just as the teacher arrived.

“Ready, children?” She glanced at her watch.

“Yes !” said everyone.

“Are we all here ?”

“Yes !”

The rain slackened still more.

They crowded to the huge door.

The rain stopped.

It was as if, in the midst of a film concerning an avalanche, a tornado, a hurricane, a volcanic eruption, something had, first, gone wrong with the sound apparatus, thus muffling and finally cutting off all noise, all of the blasts and repercussions and thunders, and then, second, ripped the film from the projector and inserted in its place a beautiful tropical slide which did not move or tremor. The world ground to a standstill. The silence was so immense and unbelievable that you felt your ears had been stuffed or you had lost your hearing altogether. The children put their hands to their ears. They stood apart.

The door slid back and the smell of the silent, waiting world came in to them.

The sun came out.

It was the color of flaming bronze and it was very large. And the sky around it was a blazing blue tile color. And the jungle burned with sunlight as the children, released from their spell, rushed out, yelling into the springtime.

“Now, don’t go too far,” called the teacher after them. “You’ve only two hours, you know. You wouldn’t want to get caught out !”

But they were running and turning their faces up to the sky and feeling the sun on their cheeks like a warm iron; they were taking off their jackets and letting the sun burn their arms.

“Oh, it’s better than the sun lamps, isn’t it?”

“Much, much better!”

They stopped running and stood in the great jungle that covered Venus, that grew and never stopped growing, tumultuously, even as you watched it. It was a nest of octopi, clustering up great arms of fleshlike weed, wavering, flowering in this brief spring. It was the color of rubber and ash, this jungle, from the many years without sun. It was the color of stones and white cheeses and ink, and it was the color of the moon.

The children lay out, laughing, on the jungle mattress, and heard it sigh and squeak under them resilient and alive. They ran among the trees, they slipped and fell, they pushed each other, they played hide-and-seek and tag, but most of all they squinted at the sun until the tears ran down their faces; they put their hands up to that yellowness and that amazing blueness and they breathed of the fresh, fresh air and listened and listened to the silence which suspended them in a blessed sea of no sound and no motion. They looked at everything and savored everything. Then, wildly, like animals escaped from their caves, they ran and ran in shouting circles. They ran for an hour and did not stop running.

And then... In the midst of their running one of the girls wailed. Everyone stopped. The girl, standing in the open, held out her hand.

“Oh, look, look,” she said, trembling.

They came slowly to look at her opened palm. In the center of it, cupped and huge, was a single raindrop. She began to cry, looking at it. They glanced quietly at the sun.

“Oh. Oh.”

A few cold drops fell on their noses and their cheeks and their mouths. The sun faded behind a stir of mist. A wind blew cold around them. They turned and started to walk back toward the underground house, their hands at their sides, their smiles vanishing away.

A boom of thunder startled them and like leaves before a new hurricane, they tumbled upon each other and ran. Lightning struck ten miles away, five miles away, a mile, a half mile. The sky darkened into midnight in a flash.

They stood in the doorway of the underground for a moment until it was raining hard. Then they closed the door and heard the gigantic sound of the rain falling in tons and avalanches, everywhere and forever.

“Will it be seven more years?”

“Yes. Seven.”

Then one of them gave a little cry.

“Margot!”

“What?”

“She’s still in the closet where we locked her.”

“Margot.”

They stood as if someone had driven them, like so many stakes, into the floor. They looked at each other and then looked away. They glanced out at the world that was raining now and raining and raining steadily. They could not meet each other’s glances. Their faces were solemn and pale. They looked at their hands and feet, their faces down.

“Margot.”

One of the girls said, “Well... ?”

No one moved.

“Go on,” whispered the girl.

They walked slowly down the hall in the sound of cold rain. They turned through the doorway to the room in the sound of the storm and thunder, lightning on their faces, blue and terrible. They walked over to the closet door slowly and stood by it.

Behind the closet door was only silence.

They unlocked the door, even more slowly, and let Margot out.

<https://americanliterature.com>



ACHIEVEMENT TESTS



TEST 1

1. Fill in the gaps with prepositions.

1. Is there anything ... your taste ... the menu?
2. Could you help me to set ... plates?
3. Could you dish ... the vegetables?
4. Our family are all nuts ... homemade ice-cream.
5. What can you recommend ... the first course?
6. Put the used cutlery ... the sink, I'll wash it ... later.
7. I've cut ... the amount of meat I eat.
8. During lent her husband fasts ... bread and vegetables.
9. A lot of people are allergic ... nuts.
10. She slimmed ... 50 kg ... the wedding.

2. Express the following in a different way.

1. A small dish at the beginning of the meal.
2. A complete meal served at a hotel or restaurant for a set price.
3. To sell very quickly and in large amounts.
4. To try to do something more than you are able to do.
5. A person who supports his family with money he earns.
6. A meal made up of dishes or food brought by many different people.
7. To feel ill and not want to eat anything.
8. With a separate price for each item on the menu.

3. Give the English equivalents of the following expressions.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1) перекусить и утолить жажду; | 6) шведский стол; |
| 2) фирменное блюдо; | 7) посолить и поперчить блюдо; |
| 3) голодный как волк; | 8) заправка для салата; |
| 4) оставить чаевые; | 9) приятного аппетита. |
| 5) растворимый кофе; | |

4. Give the opposite of the following.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1) fizzy drink; | 6) rare steak; |
| 2) soft-boiled egg; | 7) beverages; |
| 3) a limited menu; | 8) dry wine; |
| 4) fresh bread; | 9) bitter taste. |
| 5) clear the table; | |

5. Translate into English.

1. Мама собиралась испечь в духовке вкусный пирог со свежими ягодами и взбитыми сливками, рецепт которого нашла во французской поваренной книге, но у нее закончилась мука.

2. Традиционный английский завтрак включает яичницу, сосиски и/или тонко нарезанный и обжаренный бекон, грибы и фасоль в томатном соусе. Некоторые британцы предпочитают овсяную кашу, яйца всмятку и хлопья. Из напитков – кофе или черный крепкий чай с молоком.

3. Значительную часть национальной белорусской кухни составляют блюда из картофеля. В нашем ресторане шеф-повар готовит картофель на пару, а также тушит, жарит во фритюре, варит как очищенным, так и неочищенным («в мундире»).

4. Итальянцы любят плотно покушать. Обед в Италии включает в себя такие блюда, как салат (закуска), первое блюдо, второе блюдо и десерт (сыр, фрукты и сухое виноградное вино).

5. – Могу я предложить Вам прохладительные напитки?

– Клубнично-молочный коктейль и негазированную минеральную воду, пожалуйста.

6. Моя подруга – сладкоежка. Она старается сократить потребление продуктов, содержащих углеводы (пирожных, пончиков и печенья), и готовит блюда, богатые белком и клетчаткой.

7. – В меню нашего ресторана Вы найдете блюда на любой вкус. Наши фирменные блюда – стейк из лосося и ростбиф из говядины.

– У этого блюда из лосося божественный вкус. Я хотел бы заказать еще одну порцию.

8. К приходу гостей официантам нужно подготовить столовые приборы, посуду, салфетки и накрыть на стол, а также разложить по тарелкам гарнир, рыбные и мясные блюда.

9. Чтобы приготовить драники, необходимо почистить и натереть на терку картофель, мелко покрошить лук, добавить муку, яйца, щепотку соли и все перемешать. Драники традиционно подают горячими со сметаной.

10. – Принесите счет, пожалуйста. Сегодня плачу я (я угощаю).

– Как бы вы хотели заплатить, наличными или картой? Вот ваша сдача и чек.



TEST 2

1. Fill in the gaps with prepositions.

1. During sales goods are reduced ... price.
2. Do you have any more money ... you? No, I've put all my money ... that bargain.
3. Do you have white T-shirts ... stock? – I am afraid, we've sold
4. Nick is buying his car ... installments ... the hire purchase method.
5. Though Ann is only three, she can do her coat herself.
6. I'd like to try these trousers I think they will be perfect ...every day wear. – Sure, they are ... the best quality. What size do you take ... trousers?
7. Don't you think that you've paid ... the nose for that second-hand car?
– Don't worry, I'll repair it and sell it ... higher price. – You'll sell it ... a loss.
8. Have you got a change ... a ten-pound note?
9. They put their house sale.
10. Our family always stock delicatessen for New Year holiday.
11. This phone is a great deal. It's 50 per cent ... the normal retail price.
12. He splashed ... hundreds ... pounds ... designer clothes.
13. All the best bargains were snapped hours.
14. Why don't we go ... a shopping spree today and cheer ourselves
I see you quite ... a shopping mood today.

2. Give the English equivalents.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1) выгодная (удачная) покупка; | 6) укоротить брюки; |
| 2) покупать в кредит; | 7) расходы на проживание; |
| 3) ценник; | 8) выплачивать кредит; |
| 4) оплатить в кассе; | 9) купить товар по приемлемой цене; |
| 5) модный цвет; | 10) примерочная. |

3. Express the following in a different way

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) to be exactly right for someone; | 5) made-to-measure; |
| 2) looking for things to buy at a cheap price; | 6) to share the cost of something; |
| 3) smartest clothes; | 7) ready-made; |
| 4) to compare the prices of something in several shops before deciding where to buy it; | 8) to have debts; |
| | 9) to spend less money because there is less available; |
| | 10) to call at a shop. |

4. Give the opposite of the following

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1) to overcharge; | 6) to drop in value; |
| 2) well-matched; | 7) wholesale price; |
| 3) to reduce the price; | 8) to let out; |
| 4) to lend; | 9) off-the-peg; |
| 5) to come into fashion; | 10) to take up. |

5. Translate into English.

1. Этот универмаг привлекает покупателей великолепным сервисом, хорошими розничными ценами, безупречным качеством продукции. Здесь вы можете приобрести модную одежду и обувь, ювелирные украшения, галантерейные товары, красивое белье, трикотаж, ткани и головные уборы.

2. У покупателей пользуются спросом товары для спорта и отдыха, парфюмерия, косметика, канцтовары, сувениры, мебель и предметы интерьера. Их быстро раскупают.

3. Зимняя распродажа начинается после празднования Рождества. Огромные очереди выстраиваются у торговых центров задолго до открытия. Покупатели надеются купить товары за полцены, потому что магазины предоставляют большие скидки, а также беспроцентный кредит.

4. Если приобретенный товар оказался бракованным, продавец обязан его обменять или вернуть деньги за покупку.

5. – Я хотел бы купить галстук и мужскую рубашку с длинным рукавом (размер 38 по воротнику).

– К вашему шерстяному костюму, который отлично сшит и сидит как влитой, подойдет синий галстук в полоску. Он будет хорошо сочетаться с однотонной светлой рубашкой. Эта ткань хорошо носится и стирается, ее не нужно гладить.

6. В Лондоне есть множество продуктовых рынков, а также булочных, кондитерских, мясных, бакалейных, овощных и рыбных магазинов, на прилавках которых можно найти все, что нужно для приготовления изысканных блюд. Здесь продаются лучшие ингредиенты, а также свежие морепродукты и деликатесы.

7. Недвижимость очень выросла в цене за последние несколько лет, мы сможем продать наш загородный дом с большой прибылью.

8. Этот интернет-магазин предлагает оптовую и розничную продажу современной техники по очень доступным ценам.

9. На сайте магазина можно разместить онлайн-заказы на покупку ноутбуков, смартфонов и планшетов, которые можно приобрести в рассрочку.

10. В обувном магазине моя подруга примерила кожаные туфли на высоком каблуке и замшевые сапожки, но они не подошли по размеру, поэтому она купила новые кроссовки. Кроссовки сейчас в моде. Это была выгодная покупка.



TEST 3

1. Fill in the gaps with prepositions.

1. It was boiling hot last month. He had to sit ... the shade every afternoon.
2. As we worked, it was terribly muggy and humid. The sweat was pouring ... of us.
3. I could hardly breathe; I wish it would rain to cool us ...
4. Cars were skidding ... control ... the ice.
5. A very strong gust ... wind blew the newspapers ... of my hands.
6. ... the gale a row of big trees had been uprooted like matchsticks.
7. I could hardly see my own hand ... front of my face ... this dense fog.
8. Autumn ... London is usually damp ... rain and drizzle.
9. There was a gentle breeze ... the beach, just enough to cool us.
10. It was absolutely pouring ...
11. In the Tropics there is usually torrential rain most days, and there are floods ... the road.
12. I lost my hat while I was skiing, and I ended up ... frostbite ... my ears.

2. Give the opposite of the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) to clear up; | 5) he has his head in the clouds; |
| 2) short-range weather forecasting; | 6) foul weather; |
| 3) the sky is clear; | 7) sunny spells; |
| 4) it was rather stifling; | 8) gale |

3. Express the following in a different way.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) to rain slightly; | 7) light wind; |
| 2) a person who forecasts; | 8) a long period with no rainfall; |
| 3) small pieces of ice that fall during a storm; | 9) a storm with lots of snow and wind; |
| 4) common expression for describing a very hot day; | 10) a dangerous slide of snow down a mountain; |
| 5) a period of colder-than-average weather; | 11) the season of heavy rain in tropical climates. |
| 6) measurement of temperature (0 degrees is freezing and 100 degrees is boiling); | |

4. Give the English equivalents of the following expressions.

- 1) затишье перед бурей;
- 2) буря в стакане воды;
- 3) нет худа без добра;
- 4) копить/откладывать на черный день;
- 5) пытаться достичь недостижимого;
- 6) не иметь ни малейшего представления;
- 7) в полном порядке, в добром здравии;
- 8) заморозить; повременить, отложить на потом;
- 9) человек, который может быть другом только при благоприятных условиях;
- 10) сущий пустяк, легче легкого.

5. Translate into English.

1. Климат Великобритании, находящийся под влиянием Атлантического океана, – умеренный и влажный, с относительно небольшими изменениями показателей температуры воздуха в зимнее и летнее время.

2. Осенью погода обычно сырая. Часто идут дожди. Дуют сильные ветры. Дни стоят очень пасмурные. Небо затянуто облаками. По ночам иногда бывает сильный туман.

3. Началась оттепель. Снег тает. На улицах лужи и слякоть. На небе ни облачка. В воздухе чувствуется весна. Нас ожидает непродолжительный период хорошей погоды.

4. На улице +35°C в тени. Температура продолжает повышаться. Жара невыносимая. Однако благодаря сухому климату и легкому бризу жара на этом курорте переносится легче.

5. Туристы попали под ливень, промокли насквозь и простудились.

6. Зима в Канаде наступает рано. Иногда уже в конце ноября все покрывается снегом и инеем. Наступают морозы. Замерзают реки и озера. Часто бывают метели и сугробы. На дорогах гололедица.

7. На юго-востоке страны прогремят грозы, местами выпадет град, пройдут ливни. Ожидается шквалистый ветер.

8. В Японии часто происходят землетрясения, наводнения и цунами.

9. Лыжников предупредили о сильных снегопадах и возможном сходе снежной лавины на горнолыжном курорте в центральной Италии.

10. В Египте засуха, осадков не ожидается в течение всего лета.

11. По прогнозу метеорологов приближается сильный ураган. В стране объявлен режим чрезвычайного положения, эвакуировано 250 тысяч человек, отменены сотни авиарейсов.

REFERENCES

1. *Anderson, N.J.* Active Skills for Reading. Book 4 / N. J. Anderson. – 3rd ed. – Boston: National Geographic Learning, 2014.
2. *Archer, J.* The Collected Short Stories / J. Archer. – Leicester : Charnwood, 2002.
3. *Arnold, B.* Stories from the Five Towns / B. Arnold. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2008.
4. *Arthur, T. S.* Heart-Histories and Life-Pictures / T. S. Arthur. – Hamburg :Hamburg Tradition, 2011.
5. *Bernard, J.* Select Readings Upper-intermediate /J. Bernard, L. Lee. – 2nd ed. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2012.
6. *Bernard, J.* Select Readings Intermediate / J. Bernard, L. Lee. – 2nd ed. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2012.
7. *Bryson, B.* Notes from a Small Island / B. Bryson. – Harper Collins Publishers, 2015.
8. *Buchwald, A.* Beating Around the Bush / A. Buchwald. – N. Y.; London : Severn Stories Press, 2005.
9. *Bule, G.* The Tradition of the English Breakfast / G. Bule // The English Breakfast Society [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.englishbreakfastsociety.com/full-english-breakfast.html>. – Date of access : 10.12.2018.
10. *Canfield, J.* Chicken Soup for the College Soul: Inspiring and Humorous Stories for College Students / J. Canfield, M. V. Hansen, K. Kirberger, D. Clark. – HCI Publisher, 2012.
11. *Chopin, K.* Awakening and selected stories / K. Chopin. – N. Y. : Singet Classics, 2015.
12. *Eliot, G.* Adam Bede / G. Eliot. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2018.
13. *Hare, C.* Best Detective Stories of Cyril Hare / C. Hare. – London : Faber & Faber, 2009.
14. *Eales, F.* Speakout. Upper Intermediate Student's Book / F. Eales. – 2nd ed. – Essex : Pearson Education Limited, 2015.
15. *Eales, F.* Speakout. Upper Intermediate Workbook / F. Eales. – 2nd ed – Essex : Pearson Education Limited, 2015.
16. *Gairns, R.* Oxford Word Skills Advanced / R. Gairns, S. Redman. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2009.
17. *Farrell, L. F.* Students Won't Give Up Their French Fries / L. F. Farrell // The Chronicle of Higher Education [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.chronicle.com/article/Students-Wont-Give-Up-Their/> 14602. – Date of access : 10.12.2018.
18. *French, A.* Effective Reading Upper-intermediate/ A. French, C. Gough, J. McAvoy. – Macmillan, 2010.

19. *Hambrick, D. Z.* What Makes a Prodigy? / D. Z. Hambrick // Scientific American [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.scientificamerican.com/article/what-makes-a-prodigy>. – Date of access : 10.12.2018.
20. *Hawthorne, N.* The House of the Seven Gables / N. Hawthorne, M. Mendenhall. – Harlow : Pearson Education, 2015.
21. *Henry, O.* Collected stories / O. Henry, P. J. Horowitz. – N. Y.: Dorset Press, 1995.
22. *Kantor, J.* Wall Street Mothers, Stay-Home Fathers / J. Kantor, J. Silver-Greenberg // The New York Times [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.nytimes.com/2013/12/08/us/wall-street-mothers-stay-home-fathers.html>. – Date of access : 20.09.2018.
23. *Lawrence, F.* Is The Food We Eat Killing Us? / F. Lawrence // The Guardian [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access: <https://www.theguardian.com/commentisfree/2019/jan/28/global-food-killing-humans>. – Date of access : 10.12.2018.
24. *Linning, S.* Alma Deutscher: The Prodigy Whose “First Language” Is Mozart / S. Linning // Daily Mail Online [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access: <https://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-3677146/I-m-not-little-Mozart-m-little-Alma-British-child-prodigy.html>. – Date of access: 15.12.2018.
25. *London, J.* The Complete Short Stories by Jack London / J. London, R. C. Leize. –Stanford : Stanford Univ. Press, 1993.
26. *Mansfield, K.* The best short stories of Katherine Mansfield / K. Mansfield. – Mineola, N.Y. : Dover Publications, 2010.
27. *McDermott, N.* Not Eating Breakfast Won’t Help You Lose Weight, Scientists Say / N. McDermott // The Sun [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.thesun.co.uk/fabulous/8316310/skipping-breakfast-weight-loss/>. – Date of access : 15.12.2018.
28. *McKay, B.* Why Your First Impression Matters / B. McKay, K. McKay / The Art of Manliness [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.artofmanliness.com/articles/surprising-importance-first-impression>. – Date of access : 10.12.2018.
29. *Michalko, M.* The Art Of Genius: Six Ways To Think Like Einstein / M. Michalko // Thinkertoys: A Handbook of Creative-Thinking Techniques. – 2nd ed. – Ten Speed Press, 2006.
30. *Montgomery, M.* Ways of Reading : Advanced Reading Skills for Students of English Literature / M. Montgomery. – 3rd ed. – Routledge Publisher, 2006.
31. *Raton, T. S.* Prodigy Is Youngest To Receive Masters’ Degree From Oxford / T. S. Raton // Milwaukee Courier [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://milwaukeecourieronline.com/index.php/2012/05/03/prodigy-is-youngest-to-receive-masters-degree-from-oxford>. – Date of access : 15.12.2018.

32. *Schulz, K.* The Ten Best Weather Events in Fiction / K. Schulz // The New Yorker [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.newyorker.com/books/page-turner/the-ten-best-weather-events-in-fiction>. – Date of access : 10.11.2018.
33. *Segal, E.* Love Story / E. Segal. – HarperCollins Publishers, 2012.
34. *Somerset, M.* Collected Short Stories / M. Somerset. – London : Vintage Classics, 2000.
35. *Spears, D.* Developing Critical Reading Skills / D. Spears. – 9rd ed. – McGraw-Hill Education, 2012.
36. The Way the Brain Buys // The Economist [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.economist.com/christmas-specials/2008/12/18/the-way-the-brain-buys>. – Date of access: 20.09.2018.
37. *Thornley, G. C.* British and American Short Stories / G. C. Thornley. – Harlow, Essex : Pearson Education Limited, 2008.
38. *Thomas, B. J.* Advanced Vocabulary & Idioms / B. J. Thomas. – Harlow, Essex : Pearson Education Limited, 1995.
39. *Watson, D.* Advanced Vocabulary in Context / D. Watson. – Cambridge : Cambridge Univ. Press, 2010.
40. *Wilde, O.* Complete Fairy Tales of Oscar Wilde / O. Wilde. – N. Y. : Singet Classics, 2008.
41. *Winslow, T. S.* The Wisest Girl in Town and Other Stories / T. S. Winslow. – VF Press, 2017.
42. *York, M.* A Portrait of the Artist as a Young Girl / M. York // The New York Times [Electronic Resource]. – Mode of access : <https://www.nytimes.com/2004/09/28/nyregion/a-portrait-of-the-artist-as-a-young-girl.html>. – Date of access : 20.09.2018.

DICTIONARIES

1. *Ambrose, G.* The Visual Dictionary of Fashion Design /G. Ambrose, P. Harris. – AVA Publishing, 2007.
2. *Ayto, J.* Oxford Dictionary of English Idioms (Oxford Quick Reference) / J. Ayto. – 3rd ed. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2010.
3. *Corbeil, J. C.* Visual Five-Language Dictionary: English, French, German, Italian, and, Spanish (Pictorial & Illustrated Reference) / J. C. Corbeil. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2006.
4. *Fox, G.* Macmillan Dictionary of Phrasal Verbs / G. Fox, M. Rundell. – Macmillan Education, 2005.
5. *Hanks, P.* The New Oxford Thesaurus of English / P. Hanks. – Oxford : Oxford Univ. Press, 2000.

INTERNET RESOURCES

<https://www.abcnews.go.com>
<https://www.americanliterature.com>
<https://www.bbc.co.uk>
<https://www.bloomberg.com>
<https://www.britannica.com>
<https://www.busyteacher.org>
<https://www.cbsnews.com>
<https://www.english-magazine.com>
<https://www.englishlearn.com>
<https://www.etiquettescholar.com>
<https://www.forbes.com>
<https://www.historic-uk.com/CultureUK>
<http://www.idiomland.com>
<https://www.ielts speaking.co.uk>
<https://www.goodreads.com>
<https://www.learnenglish.britishcouncil.org>
<https://www.learningenglish.voanews.com>
<https://www.lingualeo.com>
<https://www.macmillanglobal.com>
<https://www.openlibrary.org>
<https://www.nationalgeographic.org>
<https://www.nytimes.com>
<https://www.sciencenewsforstudents.org>
<https://www.theguardian.com>
<https://www.thesavoylondon.com>
<https://www.thesun.co.uk>
<https://www.teachingenglish.org.uk>

CONTENTS

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ.....	3
Section I. EATING AND COOKING.....	4
Unit 1. DAILY MEALS.....	4
THE TRADITION OF THE ENGLISH BREAKFAST.....	5
SKIPPING BREAKFAST EVERYDAY KEEPS WELL-BEING AWAY ...	11
BRINGING HOME THE BACON ON THE GRAVY TRAIN	13
Unit 2. FOOD AROUND THE WORLD	16
IN PRAISE OF BRITISH FOOD	18
A COOKERY COURSE WITH A MICHELIN-STARRED CHEF.....	23
FOOD AND COOKING IN BRITISH AND AMERICAN ENGLISH ...	28
Unit 3. TABLE MANNERS AND DINING ETIQUETTE	32
INTERESTING DINING MANNERS IN DIFFERENT CULTURES	32
TRADITIONAL FORMAL DINNER PLACE SETTING	38
SPRINGTIME Á LA CARTE	40
Unit 4. ADVENTUROUS DINING.....	47
THE BEST OF WEIRD AND WONDERFUL DINING.....	48
LONDON PUBS AND RESTAURANTS:	
BEST FOOD AND PLACES TO EAT OUT	50
A LA CARTE MENU AND DINING AT THE SAVOY.....	52
DINNER’S ON ME: ENTERTAINING AND EATING OUT.....	59
Unit 5. FAST FOOD VS SLOW FOOD	62
STUDENTS WON’T GIVE UP THEIR FRENCH FRIES.....	62
CONVENIENCE FOOD CAN BE USEFUL. SOME OF IT MAY EVEN	
TASTE GOOD. BUT WATCH OUT FOR THOSE HIDDEN	
INGREDIENTS	70
THE RISE OF SLOW FOOD	72
Unit 6. ORGANIC FOOD VS NON-ORGANIC FOOD	74
THE ADVANTAGES OF ORGANIC FOOD	75
MOLECULAR GASTRONOMY: WHERE SCIENCE MEETS CUISINE..	77
FOOD FOR THOUGHT: WHAT WILL YOU BE EATING IN 2050?....	79

READING FOR PLEASURE.....	83
AFTERNOON TEA – A GREAT BRITISH TRADITION.....	83
THE LUNCHEON	84
THE STORY OF THE MOST FAMOUS CHEF IN BRITAIN	89
FOOD IDIOMS.....	99
Section II. SHOPPING AND MONEY	102
Unit 1. MONEY MATTERS	102
THE GOOD LIFE?	103
PERSONAL FINANCE: MAKING ENDS MEET.....	106
WINNING A FORTUNE	110
Unit 2. BUYING FOODSTUFFS	112
THE COST OF CONVENIENCE	113
THE WAY THE BRAIN BUYS	116
Unit 3. CLOTHES AND FASHION.....	119
THE FASHION WORLD WILL LOOK VERY DIFFERENT IN THE DISTANT FUTURE	123
ALL THE RAGE: CLOTHES AND FASHION	125
FASHION FAN OR FASHION SLAVE?.....	128
CLOTHES IDIOMS	130
Unit 4. SHOPPING HABITS.....	134
DIFFERENT KINDS OF SHOPPERS	134
A NATION OF SHOPAHOLICS.....	141
THE MILLION POUND BANK NOTE	144
Unit 5. SHOP TILL YOU DROP	155
SHOPPING SPREE IN LONDON.....	155
HARRODS – THE WORLD’S FAVOURITE DEPARMENT STORE	159
BLACK FRIDAY – THE AMERICAN HOLIDAY OF EXTREME SHOPPING	161
SHOPPING IN AMERICAN AND BRITISH ENGLISH.....	164
Unit 6. ONLINE VS TRADITIONAL SHOPPING.....	169
THE PROS AND CONS OF ONLINE SHOPPING.....	170
MODERN FORMS OF ONLINE PAYMENT	171
BITCOIN – THE CURRENCY OF THE FUTURE	173
CONSUMER RIGHTS WHEN BUYING GOODS IN THE UK.....	178

READING FOR PLEASURE.....	180
CHEAP AT HALF THE PRICE.....	180
HE SOFT SELL	187
THE GIFT OF THE MAGI.....	189
MONEY IDIOMS	193
Section III. CLIMATE AND WEATHER.....	195
Unit 1. CLIMATE VS WEATHER	195
WEATHER OR CLIMATE. WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE?	196
CLIMATE AROUND THE WORLD	197
CLIMATE AND METAPHORS	203
BRITISH WEATHER.....	206
Unit 2. WEATHER FORECASTING.....	209
ALL ABOUT WEATHER.....	211
WEATHER PREDICTION: HOW IS WEATHER FORECASTING DONE?	216
WEATHER REPORTS FOR JAPAN, CANADA, SCOTLAND AND FINLAND	220
BBC WEATHER FORECAST FOR THE UK	223
Unit 3. EXTREME WEATHER AND CLIMATE CHANGE	226
FINGERPRINT OF CLIMATE CHANGE SHOWS UP IN SOME EXTREME WEATHER.....	227
FOUL WEATHER THREATENS HOLIDAY	231
WEATHER GONE WILD.....	233
SEVERE WEATHER SAFETY TIPS.....	236
Unit 4. WEATHER AND MOOD: SUNNY AND GREY IMPACTS	238
HERE COMES THE SUN: HOW THE WEATHER AFFECTS OUR MOOD	238
MOODS ARE WEATHER IDIOMS	240
UNDER THE WEATHER.....	243
Unit 5. SEASONS AND HOLIDAYS	246
CELEBRATING THE SEASONS	247
SPRING CELEBRATIONS AROUND THE WORLD	248
SUMMER HOLIDAY SEASON IN THE UK.....	251

READING FOR PLEASURE.....	255
CAN HUMANS MANIPULATE THE WEATHER?.....	255
DAFFODILS IN BLOOM, THE WARMEST EVER DECEMBER: HOW WORRYING IS THE WORLD’S STRANGE WEATHER?	257
A TRUE SHORT STORY ABOUT WEATHER PREDICTION.....	258
ALL SUMMER IN A DAY	260
ACHIEVEMENT TESTS	266
TEST 1	266
TEST 2	268
TEST 3	270
REFERENCES	276

Учебное издание

Грицкевич Наталия Петровна

Богова Майя Григорьевна

Бусел Татьяна Викторовна

РАЗВИВАЕМ УМЕНИЯ ЧТЕНИЯ И ГОВОРЕНИЯ

Пособие

В двух частях

Часть вторая

Ответственный за выпуск *Т. В. Бусел*

Ст. корректор *С. О. Иванова*

Компьютерный набор *Т. В. Бусел*

Компьютерная верстка *Е. А. Запеко*

Подписано в печать 18.03.2021. Формат 60х84 ¹/₁₆. Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Таймс. Ризография. Усл. печ. л. 16,27. Уч.-изд. л. 17,19. Тираж 250 экз. Заказ 14.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение: учреждение образования «Минский государственный лингвистический университет». Свидетельство о государственной регистрации издателя, изготовителя, распространителя печатных изданий от 02.06.2017 г. № 3/1499. ЛП № 02330/458 от 23.01.2014 г.

Адрес: ул. Захарова, 21, 220034, г. Минск.